

Department of  
**Finance**

An Roinn

**Airgeadais**

[www.finance-ni.gov.uk](http://www.finance-ni.gov.uk)

# **Building (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2023**

**European notification version**

**Technical Booklet E - Fire Safety**

**Consultation Draft**

**July 2023**

**(closing date for receipt of responses is Monday 25/09/2023)**

**Notes:**

- 1. Proposed new text is marked in red.**
- 2. Existing text to be deleted is struck through.**
- 3. Amendments made in 2022 is marked in blue.**

# Contents

	page
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
Technical booklets	4
This Technical booklet	4
Protected buildings	5
Other legislation	5
Commission guidance papers and decisions	6
<b>Part E Regulations</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Guidance – Performance and introduction to provisions</b>	<b>10</b>
Means of escape	10
Internal fire spread – Linings	13
Internal fire spread – Structure	13
External fire spread	15
Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service	16
Use of this Technical Booklet	17
<b>Section 1      General</b>	<b>18</b>
Definitions	18
General guidance	24
Performance of materials, products and structures	25
Reaction to Fire	26
Non-combustible materials	26
Materials of limited combustibility	27
Classification	27
Alternative approaches	28
<b>Section 2      Means of escape</b>	<b>29</b>
Dwellinghouses	29
Introduction	29

---

Common provisions	29
Roof space conversions	34
Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellinghouses	36
Flats	38
Means of escape	38
Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in flats	38
Buildings other than dwellings	39
Horizontal part of the escape route	39
Vertical part of the escape route	52
General provisions	67
<b>Section 3 Internal fire spread - Linings</b>	<b>75</b>
Classification of performance of materials or products (National classification)	75
Classification of performance of materials or products (European classification)	77
Performance of wall and ceiling linings	78
<b>Section 4 Internal fire spread - Structure</b>	<b>82</b>
Tests for fire resistance	82
Fire resistance of elements of structure and certain other components of the building	88
Compartmentation	94
Protected shafts between compartments	99
Fire doors	101
Provision of cavity barriers	105
Pipes penetrating fire separating elements	113
Car parks for light vehicles	117
Shopping complexes	119
Insulating core panels used for internal structures	120
<b>Section 5 External fire spread</b>	<b>124</b>
Combustibility of external walls	124
Space separation - External walls	131
Provisions for and calculation of space separation and unprotected areas	135

---

Canopies	144	
Roofs	145	
<b>Section 6</b>	<b>Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service</b>	<b>152</b>
Firefighting shafts	152	
Venting of heat and smoke from basements	155	
Rolling shutters in compartment walls	157	
Vehicle access	157	
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Purpose Groups</b>	<b>160</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>Rules for measurement</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>Publications referred to</b>	<b>166</b>

## Technical Booklets

This Technical Booklet, which takes effect on ~~31st October 2012-XXXXXX~~, is one of a series that has been prepared by the Department of Finance and Personnel (the Department) for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended) (the Building Regulations).

At the back of each Technical Booklet is a list of all the Technical Booklets that have been prepared and published by the Department for this purpose.

The guidance given in a Technical Booklet includes performance standards and design provisions relating to compliance with specific aspects of the Building Regulations for the more common building situations.

If the guidance in a Technical Booklet is followed there will be a presumption of compliance with the requirements of those Building Regulations covered by that guidance. However, this presumption can be overturned, so simply following the guidance does not guarantee compliance. For example, if a particular circumstance is not one of the more common building situations the design provisions given in the Technical Booklet may not be appropriate.

**There are likely to be alternative ways of demonstrating compliance with the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations other than by following a design provision given in a Technical Booklet. There is therefore no obligation to adopt any particular provision set out in a Technical Booklet, should you decide to comply in some other way. However, you will have to demonstrate that your alternative solution meets the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations by those other means.**

## This Technical Booklet

### Requirements

The guidance contained in this Technical Booklet relates only to the requirements of regulations 33, 34, 35, 36, and 37, **37A and 37B**. The work will also have to comply with all other relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

### Materials and workmanship

Any building work which is subject to requirements imposed by Part A of the Building Regulations should be carried out in accordance with regulation 23 of those regulations. Guidance on meeting these requirements for materials and workmanship is given in Technical Booklet B which supports Part B.

---

The Building Regulations are made for specific purposes, primarily securing the health, safety, welfare and convenience of people and for the conservation of fuel and power. Standards and technical approvals are relevant guidance to the extent that they relate to these purposes. However, they may also address other aspects of performance such as serviceability, or aspects which although they relate to health and safety are not covered by the Building Regulations.

### **Named standards**

Where this Technical Booklet makes reference to a named standard, the relevant version of the standard is the one listed in Appendix C. However, if this version has been replaced or updated by the issuing standards body, the new version may be used as a source of guidance provided that it continues to address the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

### **Diagrams**

The diagrams in this Technical Booklet supplement the text. They do not show all the details of construction and are not intended to illustrate compliance with any other requirement of the Building Regulations. They are not necessarily to scale and should not be used as working details.

## **Protected buildings**

District councils have a duty to take account of the desirability to preserve the character of protected buildings when carrying out their functions under Building Regulations. Therefore, where work is to be carried out to a protected building to comply with Part E or any other Part of the Building Regulations, special consideration may be given to the extent of such work for compliance where it would unacceptably alter the character or appearance of the building. Protected buildings are defined in Article 3A(2) of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 (as amended).

## **Other legislation**

The provisions of this Technical Booklet relate to the requirements of Building Regulations and do not include measures which may be necessary to meet the requirements of other legislation. Such other legislation may operate during the design or construction stages or when a building is brought into use and can extend to cover aspects which are outside the scope of the Building Regulations.

### **The Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006**

The main legislation in this area is the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 and the associated Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010. This legislation imposes a general duty to take such fire precautions as may be reasonably required to ensure that relevant premises are safe for the occupants and those in the immediate vicinity. By virtue of this legislation certain duty holders are required to carry out and continually review a fire risk assessment of the workplace and the relevant premises.

---

## **The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993**

The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993 (the Workplace Regulations) contain some requirements which affect building design. The main requirements are now covered by the Building Regulations, but for further information see – The Workplace Regulations and the *Workplace Health, Safety and Welfare Approved Code of Practice and Guidance* published by TSO.

The Workplace Regulations apply to the common parts of flats and similar buildings if people such as cleaners, wardens and caretakers are employed to work in these common parts. Where the requirements of the Building Regulations that are covered by Part E do not apply to dwellings, the provisions may still be required in the situations described above in order to satisfy the Workplace Regulations.

## **The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007**

The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 impose requirements which affect building design. These include, amongst other things, the need for co-ordination, co-operation and communication between all parties in the construction process.

The purpose of this Technical Booklet is to provide guidance on the fire safety requirements for the completed building. It does not address the risk of fire during the construction work which is covered by the Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007. HSE has issued the following guidance on fire safety in construction – *Construction information sheet No 51 Construction fire safety; and HSG 168 Fire safety in construction work*.

When the construction work is being carried out on a building which, apart from the construction site part of the building, is occupied, the Northern Ireland Fire and Rescue Service Board is responsible for the enforcement of the 2007 Regulations in respect of fire. Where the building is unoccupied, the Health and Safety Executive is responsible for enforcement on the construction site.

## **Commission guidance papers and decisions**

The following guidance papers and Commission Decisions are directly relevant to fire matters under the Construction Products Directive –

Guidance paper G – The European classification system for the reaction to fire performance of construction products.

Guidance paper J – Transitional arrangements under the Construction Products Directive.

Commission Decision of 8 February 2000 (2000/147/EC) implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the reaction to fire performance of construction products.



---

Commission Decision of 3 May 2000 (2000/367/EC) implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof.

## Part E Regulations

Part E (comprising regulations 32 to 37) of the Building Regulations, which sets out the requirements for Fire safety, has been replicated below for the convenience of the user of this Technical Booklet and is taken directly from the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 in operation at the date of publication of this Technical Booklet.

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in this Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the regulations below, are current on the date when plans are deposited or notices given to the district council.

As Part A (comprising regulations 1 to 21) of the Building Regulations sets out the Interpretation along with the procedural requirements relating to the application of the regulations, the Department advises that all Parts of the Building Regulations are read in conjunction with Part A of those regulations.

The Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 and any subsequent amendment/s may be viewed by following the links from the Department's website at "[www.buildingregulationsni.gov.uk](http://www.buildingregulationsni.gov.uk)".

### PART E

#### Fire safety

##### Application and interpretation

32.—(1) Regulations 33 and 35(3) shall not apply to a prison within the meaning of the Prisons Act (Northern Ireland) 1953(a) or any other place of lawful detention.

(2) Regulation 37B applies only when a building is—

- (a) erected; or
- (b) formed by a material change of use.

(2 3) In this Part—

“Above ground level” has the same meaning as defined in regulation 23(4);

“Dwelling” means a self-contained unit of residential accommodation occupied (whether or not as a sole or main residence)—

- (a) by a single person or by people living together as a family; or
- (b) by not more than 6 people living together as a single household, including a household where care is provided for residents;

“Dwellinghouse” means a dwelling on one or more storeys which is detached or forms part of a building from all other parts of which it is divided only vertically and does not include a flat;

“Fire safety duties” has the meaning given by Article 52 of the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 or duties associated with the fire safety measures in a building containing one or more flats with a storey more than 11m above ground level;

“Fire safety information” means as-built information relating to the design and construction of a building or extension, and the services, fittings and equipment provided in or in connection with a building or extension which will assist the person with fire safety duties to operate and maintain the building or extension with reasonable safety;

“Flat” has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 2 in Part A;

“Internal linings” means the materials lining any partition, wall, ceiling or other internal structure;

“Means of escape” means structural means whereby, in the event of a fire, a safe route or routes is or are provided for people to travel from any point in a building to a place of safety; and

“Place of safety” means a place, outside the building, in which people are in no danger from fire within the building-;

“Purpose built student accommodation (PBSA)” means housing built specifically for students to live in;

“Relevant change of use” is a material change of use where, after the change of use takes place— the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 will apply, or continue to apply to the building or a building containing one or more flats with a storey more than 11m above ground level is created;

“Relevant premises” has the meaning given by Article 50 of the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006; and

“Residential care Premises” includes residential care homes, nursing homes, children’s homes and residential family centres, each having the same meaning as in the Health & Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement & Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003;

### **Means of escape**

33. A building shall be so designed and constructed that in the event of a fire there is—
- (a) where appropriate, adequate means of automatic detection;
  - (b) adequate means of giving warning; and
  - (c) adequate means of escape, which can be safely and effectively used at all material times.

### **Internal fire spread – Linings**

34. To inhibit the spread of fire within a building the internal linings shall—
- (a) offer adequate resistance to the spread of flame over their surfaces; and
  - (b) where they are located in a circulation space, have a low rate of heat release or a low rate of fire growth when ignited.

### **Internal fire spread – Structure**

35.—(1) A building shall be so designed and constructed that, in the event of a fire, its stability will be retained for a reasonable period.

(2) A wall common to two or more buildings shall be so designed and constructed that it provides adequate resistance to the spread of fire between those buildings and for the purposes of this paragraph a dwellinghouse in a terrace and a semi-detached dwellinghouse shall be considered as a separate building.

(3) To inhibit the spread of fire within it, a building shall be adequately sub-divided with

fire-resisting construction.

(4) A building shall be so designed and constructed that the spread of fire (and in particular smoke) within concealed spaces in its structure and fabric is adequately inhibited.

### **External fire spread**

**36.** The external walls and roof of a building shall be so designed and constructed that they afford adequate resistance to the spread of fire over them, and from one building to another, having regard to—

- (a) in the case of an external wall - the use, position and height of the building; and
- (b) in the case of a roof - the use and position of the building.

### **Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service**

**37.—(1)** A building shall be designed and constructed with such reasonable facilities as are necessary to assist the Fire and Rescue Service in ensuring the safety of people in and about the building in the event of a fire.

(2) Reasonable provisions shall be made within the boundary of the premises for access to the building by fire and rescue appliances for the purpose of paragraph (1).

### **Provision of fire safety information**

**37A.— (1)** This regulation only applies when building work or a relevant change of use creates—

- (a) a building as defined as a relevant premises under the Fire and Rescue Services (NI) Order 2006; or
- (b) a building containing one or more flats with a storey more than 11m above ground level.

(2) The person carrying out the work shall—

- (a) provide adequate fire safety information to the person with fire safety duties in a building not later than the date of completion of the work, or the date of occupation of the building or extension, whichever is the earlier; and
- (b) give a notice in writing to the district council stating that the requirements of subparagraph (a) have been met.

### **Automatic fire suppression system**

**37B.— (1)** A building shall be designed and constructed with a suitable automatic fire suppression system.

(2) This regulation applies only to—

- (a) a building containing one or more flats which has a storey more than 11 m above ground level.
- (b) a building containing purpose built student accommodation with a storey more than 11m above ground level; and
- (c) a residential care premises.



## Means of escape

### Performance

- 0.1 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 33 in Part E will be met if there is sufficient means for giving early warning of fire for persons in a building and –
- (a) if there are routes of sufficient number and capacity, which are suitably located to enable persons to escape to a place of safety in the event of fire;
  - (b) if the routes are sufficiently protected from the effects of fire by enclosure where necessary;
  - (c) if the routes are adequately lit;
  - (d) if the exits are suitably signed; and
  - (e) if there are appropriate facilities to either limit the ingress of smoke to the escape route(s) or to restrict the fire and remove smoke.

The extent to which the measures in respect of escape routes are necessary is dependent on the use of the building, its size and height.

### Introduction to provisions in Section 2

- 0.2 The guidance in Section 2 is concerned with ensuring that occupants are given warning of, and have a means of escape from, a fire. It only refers to structural fire precautions where these are necessary to safeguard an escape route. The provisions have been prepared on the basis that the occupants of any part of a building should be able to escape from the building, in the event of a fire, without external assistance.

In dwellings and certain other buildings an automatic fire detection and alarm system can significantly increase the level of safety by automatically giving an early warning of fire. In other buildings an appropriate fire alarm system should provide adequate warning to occupants.

The design of the means of escape is based on the assumption that a fire will start in only one location and initially be a hazard in that area only. Subsequently it may spread to other parts, usually through circulation routes. Furnishings and equipment are not covered by the Building Regulations but are usually the items first ignited in a fire. A fire is less likely to start within the structure of the building or in a circulation area.

The primary danger in the early stages of a fire is not flame but smoke and other products of combustion which can directly affect the occupants of the building and obscure the escape routes. Measures designed to provide safe means of escape must therefore include provisions to limit the spread of smoke and other products of combustion.

---

The basic principles for the design of means of escape are –

- (a) there should be alternative means of escape from most locations so that people can turn their back on a fire and travel away from it to a place of safety; and
- (b) where direct escape to a place of safety is not possible, the aim is to reach a place of relative safety, such as a protected stairway, within a reasonable travel distance. In such cases the escape route should consist of two parts – the first part in unprotected rooms and circulation areas, and the second part in protected stairways and in some circumstances protected corridors.

A protected stairway is considered to be a place of relative safety within which people can proceed at their own pace to a place of safety. Smoke and flames must be excluded from protected stairways by fire and smoke-resisting construction or by an appropriate smoke control system or both.

The ultimate place of safety is the open air clear of the effects of the fire.

The following are not acceptable for means of escape –

- (i) a lift (except a suitably designed and installed evacuation lift);
- (ii) a passenger conveyor or escalator;
- (iii) a portable or throw-out ladder; and
- (iv) manipulative apparatus and appliances.

## **Specific approaches for the design of means of escape**

### **Shopping complexes**

- 0.3 Although the guidance in Section 2 may be readily applied to individual shops, shopping complexes present a different set of escape problems. The design of shop units within a shopping complex should be compatible with the fire strategy for the complex as a whole. A suitable approach is given in the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-10.

Note – BS 5588-10 applies more restrictive provisions to shop units with only one exit in covered shopping complexes.

### **Health care premises**

- 0.4 Health care premises including hospitals and residential health care buildings are quite diverse and can be used by a variety of patients, often requiring different types of care to suit their specific needs. The choice of fire safety strategy is dependent upon the way a building is designed, furnished, staffed and managed and the level of dependency of the patients.

In parts of health care premises designed to be used by patients, where there are people who are bedridden or who have very restricted mobility, the principle of total evacuation in the event of a fire may be inappropriate. It is also unrealistic to suppose that all patients will leave without assistance. In this and other ways the specialised nature of some health care premises demands a different approach to the provision of means of escape, from much of that embodied in the guidance given in Section 2.

---

The Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety has produced a set of guidance documents on fire precautions in health care buildings under the general title of the *Northern Ireland Firecode*.

A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in health care premises is given in the relevant publications contained in the *Northern Ireland Firecode*. (These documents may also be used for non-NHS health care premises.)

### **Assembly buildings**

- 0.5 There are particular problems that arise when fixed seating impinges on people's ability to escape in the event of a fire. This may occur at sports grounds, theatres, lecture halls and conference centres etc. Guidance on this and other aspects of means of escape in an Assembly building is given in Sections 3 and 5 of BS 5588-6 and the relevant recommendations of that code should be followed in appropriate cases. In the case of buildings to which The Safety of Sports Grounds (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 applies the relevant guidance in the *Northern Ireland guide to safety at sports grounds* should be followed.

### **Houses in multiple occupation (HMO)**

- 0.6 A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in a house in multiple occupation is given in the relevant provisions of Section 5 of DOE Circular 12/92: *Houses in multiple occupation*.

The licensing of HMOs in Northern Ireland is overseen by the Housing Executive which may require additional measures. The Housing Executive has published the following guidance: *Houses in multiple occupation, Fire safety guide*.

### **Hotels and boarding houses**

- 0.7 A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in a Hotel or Boarding House is given in the relevant provisions of Chapters 13 and 14 of the *Guide to fire precautions in premises used as hotels or boarding houses which require a fire certificate* published by the Home Office: 1991.

### **Schools**

- 0.8 Although the guidance in this Technical Booklet applies to schools, additional life safety guidance in respect of means of escape may be found in *BB 100: Design for fire safety in schools*.



---

## Internal fire spread – Linings

### Performance

- 0.9 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 34 in Part E will be met if the spread of flame over the internal linings of a building is restricted by making provision for them to have low rates of surface spread of flame, and in some cases to have a low rate of heat release, so as to limit the contribution that the fabric of the building makes to fire growth. In relation to the European fire tests and classification system, the requirements of regulation 34 in Part E will be met if the heat released from the internal linings is restricted by making provision for them to have a resistance to ignition and a rate of fire growth which are reasonable in the circumstances.

The extent to which this is necessary is dependent on the location of the linings.

### Introduction to provisions in Section 3

- 0.10 The materials used for the linings of walls and ceilings in a building can significantly affect the spread of fire and its rate of growth. The guidance in Section 3 restricts the spread of fire over internal linings by ensuring they have low rates of surface spread of flame. In some locations the internal linings must also have a low rate of heat production so as to limit the contribution that the fabric of the building makes to fire growth.

There are no provisions in relation to the upper surfaces of floors and stairs because such surfaces are not involved significantly in a fire until it is well developed. They do not therefore play an important part in fire spread during the early stages of a fire, which are the most relevant to the life safety of occupants.

Although furniture and fittings can have a major effect on fire spread it is not possible to control them through Building Regulations, and no provisions relating to them are included in this Technical Booklet. The fire characteristics of furniture and fittings may be controlled in some buildings under other legislation which applies to those buildings when in use.

## Internal fire spread – Structure

### Performance

- 0.11 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 35 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if the loadbearing elements of structure of a building are capable of withstanding the effects of fire for an appropriate period without loss of stability;
  - (b) if a building is sub-divided by elements of fire-resisting construction into compartments;
  - (c) if any openings in fire-separating elements are suitably protected in order to maintain the integrity of the element (i.e. the continuity of the fire separation); and

- 
- (d) if any hidden voids in the construction are sealed and subdivided to inhibit the unseen spread of fire and products of combustion, in order to reduce the risk of structural failure, and the spread of fire, in so far as they pose a threat to the safety of people in and around the building.

The extent to which any of these measures are necessary is dependent on the use of the building, in some cases its size, and on the location of the element of construction.

#### **Introduction to provisions in Section 4**

- 0.12 The guidance in Section 4 is concerned with the spread of fire within a building. This can be restricted by the provision of structural measures such as fire-resisting elements of construction, compartmentation, cavity barriers and fire-stopping.

Fire-resisting elements of construction – the objective of providing the elements of structure and certain other components of the building with a minimum standard of fire resistance is to minimise the risk to the occupants whilst evacuating, to the firefighting personnel whilst engaged in search and rescue operations and to people in the vicinity of the building who may be hurt by falling debris or as a result of the impact of the collapsing building on another building.

Compartmentation – the spread of fire within a building can be restricted by subdividing it into compartments separated from one another by walls and/or floors of fire-resisting construction. The objectives are to prevent rapid fire spread, which could trap occupants of the building, and to reduce the chance of a fire becoming large, on the basis that a large fire is more dangerous, not only to occupants and firefighting personnel, but to people in the vicinity of the building.

Cavity barriers – concealed and extensive spaces within construction provide a ready route for the hidden spread of smoke and flame. The objectives of cavity barriers are to limit the extent of such spaces and to subdivide them where they would otherwise form a pathway around fire-resisting construction.

Protection of penetrations – in order that the fire integrity of elements of structure intended to provide fire separation is maintained, penetrations of such construction, by pipes, ducts, cables, etc. must be suitably protected.

Fire-stopping – the objective of fire-stopping is to adequately seal or protect every joint, imperfection of fit, opening and penetration in an element of structure intended to provide fire separation, so that its effectiveness is not impaired.

This Section also contains guidance relating to car parks for light vehicles. In buildings or separated parts of buildings used as parking for cars and other light vehicles the fire load is well defined and not particularly high. Fire spread is not likely to occur between one vehicle and another. Where the car park is well ventilated (so that heat and smoke can dissipate readily) there is a low probability of fire spread from one storey to another.

---

## External fire spread

### Performance

- 0.13 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 36 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if the external walls are constructed so that
    - (i) the risk of ignition from an external source, and the spread of fire over their surfaces, is restricted by making provision for them to have low rates of heat release;
    - (ii) **the materials used to construct external walls and attachments to them in a building of any height and how they are assembled do not contribute to the rate of fire spread up the outside of a building.**
  - (b) if the amount of unprotected area in the side of a building is restricted so as to limit the amount of thermal radiation that can pass through the wall, taking the distance between the wall and the boundary into account; and
  - (c) if the roof is constructed so that the risk of spread of flame and/or fire penetration from an external fire source is restricted,

in each case so as to limit the risk of a fire spreading from the building to another building beyond the boundary, or vice versa.

The extent to which this is necessary is dependent on the use of the building, its distance from the boundary and, in some cases, its height.

### Introduction to provisions in Section 5

- 0.14 The guidance in Section 5 which relates to the extent to which fire may spread over and between buildings depends on the size and intensity of the fire, the construction of the external walls and roof, and the distance between the buildings.

Construction of walls – the fire resistance of an external wall and the combustibility of its external face are controlled to reduce its susceptibility to ignition from an external source and the danger from fire spreading up the external face of the building and **the materials used for external walls and attachments to them, do not contribute to the rate of fire spread up the outside of a building.**

---

Construction of roofs – the combustibility of the external surface of a roof is controlled to reduce its susceptibility to ignition from an external source.

Distance between buildings – adequate separation between buildings is achieved by relating the amount of unprotected area (e.g. windows, areas of combustible wall, etc.) in the wall of a building or compartment to the distance that wall is from its relevant boundary. It may be advantageous to reduce compartment sizes or to provide compartmentation where none would otherwise be necessary, as this will reduce the size of the fire and may permit a reduced boundary distance or alternatively, an increase in unprotected area.

## **Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service**

### **Performance**

- 0.15 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 37 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if there is sufficient means of external access to enable fire appliances to be brought near to a building for effective use;
  - (b) if there is sufficient means of access into, and within, a building for firefighting personnel to effect search and rescue and fight fire;
  - (c) if a building is provided with sufficient internal fire mains and other facilities to assist firefighters in their tasks; and
  - (d) if a building is provided with adequate means for venting heat and smoke from a fire in a basement.

These access arrangements and facilities are only required in the interests of the health and safety of people in and around the building. The extent to which they are required will depend on the use and size of the building in so far as it affects the health and safety of those people.

### **Introduction to provisions in Section 6**

- 0.16 The guidance in Section 6 relating to facilities and access is for the purposes of assisting the Fire and Rescue Service to ensure the safety of people in and around a building.

Generally in small buildings the combination of the access offered by the normal means of access and egress, and the ability of the Fire and Rescue Service to work from ladders and appliances are sufficient without special access or internal facilities. However, in large buildings and buildings with basements the Fire and Rescue Service will invariably work inside the building and firefighting shafts, fire mains, venting of basements and access will be necessary.

Firefighting shafts – the provisions are to ensure that the Fire and Rescue Service will have a secure operating base on every storey of large buildings.

Fire mains – the purpose of a fire main within a firefighting shaft is to enable firefighters to connect hoses and receive a supply of water for firefighting and rescue activities.

---

Access – the provisions relating to vehicle access are to enable the Fire and Rescue Service’s pumping appliances to supply water to the fire mains and for high reach appliances to be deployed.

Venting of basements – the enclosed nature of a basement prevents the dispersal of heat and smoke, which tend to rise up the access that the Fire and Rescue Service may be using to approach the fire. The provisions for smoke removal facilities are to enable firefighters to more effectively search for and rescue any people who may be trapped, and to locate and attack the fire.

## **Use of this Technical Booklet**

### **Relationship between Sections**

- 0.17 The guidance set out in this Technical Booklet under Sections 2 to 6 deals with different aspects of fire safety. Whilst the guidance appropriate to each of these aspects is set out separately, many of the provisions are closely interlinked. For example, there is a close link between the provisions for means of escape (Section 2) and those for the control of fire growth (Section 3), fire containment (Section 4) and facilities for the Fire and Rescue Service (Section 6). Similarly, there are links between Section 4 and the provisions for controlling external fire spread (Section 5), and between Section 4 and Section 6. Interaction between these different provisions should be recognised when considering alternative solutions, as the adoption of a higher standard of provision in respect of one aspect may be of benefit in respect to the provisions relating to one or more other aspects. Thus the provisions in the Technical Booklet as a whole should be considered as a package aimed at achieving an acceptable standard of fire safety.

### **Provisions common to more than one Section**

- 0.18 Within this Technical Booklet there are a number of matters which are relevant to more than one Section. Generally these have been located in the most appropriate Section and cross referenced where necessary. However, definitions, the classification of purpose groups and the methods for measurement are needed for all Sections. These have been drawn together for common reference in Section 1, Appendix A and Appendix B respectively.

### Definitions

1.1      In this Technical Booklet the following definitions apply –

**Above ground level** has the same meaning as defined in regulation 32 in Part E of the building regulations.

**Access room** – a room that forms the only escape route from an inner room.

**Accommodation stairway** – a stairway, additional to that or those required for escape purposes, provided for the convenience of occupants.

**Alternative escape routes** – escape routes sufficiently separated by either direction and space, or by fire-resisting construction, to ensure that one is still available should the other be affected by fire.

**Alternative exit** – one of two or more exits, each of which is separate from the other.

**Appliance ventilation duct** – a duct provided to convey combustion air to a gas appliance.

**Atrium** (plural atria) – a space within a building not necessarily vertically aligned, passing through one or more structural floors. (The term does not include enclosed lift wells, enclosed escalator wells, building services ducts and stairways.)

**Automatic fire detection and alarm system** – a system incorporating smoke detectors, sounders, control equipment, protected wiring and a back-up power supply which is capable of automatically detecting smoke and thereupon giving an audible alarm.

**Automatic release mechanism** – a device which will allow a door held open by it to close automatically in the event of each or any one of the following –

- (a) detection of smoke by automatic apparatus suitable in nature, quality and location;
- (b) operation of a hand operated switch fitted in a suitable position;
- (c) failure of electricity supply to the device, apparatus or switch; and
- (d) operation of the fire alarm system where fitted.

**Automatic self-closing device** – a device which is capable of closing a door from any angle and against any latch fitted to the door.

[The term does not include rising butt hinges unless the door is –

- (a) to (or within) a dwelling;
- (b) between a dwellinghouse and its garage; or
- (c) in a cavity barrier.]

**Basement storey** – a storey with a floor which at some point is more than 1.2 m below the highest level of ground adjacent to the outside walls.

---

**Cavity barrier** – a construction provided to close a concealed space against penetration of smoke or flame, or provided to restrict the movement of smoke or flame within such a space.

**Ceiling** – a part of a building which encloses and is exposed overhead in a room, protected shaft or circulation space. (The soffit of a rooflight, but not the frame is included as part of the ceiling surface. An upstand below a rooflight should be considered as wall.)

**Circulation space** – a space (including a protected stairway) mainly used as a means of access between a room and an exit from the building or compartment.

**Class 0** – a product performance classification for wall and ceiling linings. The relevant test criteria are set out in paragraph 3.4.

**Compartment** – a building or part of a building, comprising one or more rooms, spaces or storeys, constructed to prevent the spread of fire to or from another part of the same building, or an adjoining building. A roof space above the top storey of a compartment is included in that compartment.

**Compartment floor** – a fire-resisting floor used in the separation of one compartment from another.

**Compartment wall** – a fire-resisting wall used in the separation of one compartment from another.

**Concealed space or cavity** – a space enclosed by elements of a building (including a suspended ceiling) or contained within an element, but not a room, cupboard, circulation space, protected shaft or space within a flue, chute, duct, pipe or conduit.

**Dead end** – area from which escape is possible in one direction only.

**Direct distance** – the shortest distance from any point within the floor area to the nearest storey exit, measured within the external enclosures of the building, ignoring walls, partitions and fittings, other than the enclosing walls/partitions to protected stairways.

**Dwelling** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Dwellinghouse** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Element of structure** –

- (a) a member forming part of the structural frame of a building or any other beam or column;
- (b) a loadbearing wall or loadbearing part of a wall;
- (c) a floor;
- (d) a gallery (but not a loading gallery, fly gallery, stage grid, lighting bridge, or any gallery provided for similar purposes or for maintenance and repair);
- (e) an external wall; and

- 
- (f) a compartment wall (including a wall common to two or more buildings).

(However, see paragraph 4.11 for exclusions from the provisions for elements of structure.)

**Emergency egress window** – an openable window in a dwelling that may be used for emergency egress in order to avoid entrapment should the escape route or routes be blocked by fire or smoke.

**Emergency lighting** – lighting provided for use when the electricity supply to the normal lighting fails.

**Escape lighting** – that part of the emergency lighting which is provided to ensure that the escape route is illuminated at all material times.

**Escape route** – route forming that part of the means of escape from any point in a building to a final exit.

**Evacuation lift** – a lift that may be used for the evacuation of people in the event of a fire.

**External wall** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 22 in Part B of the Building Regulations.

**Final exit** – the termination of an escape route from a building giving direct access to a street, passageway, walkway or open space, and sited to ensure the rapid dispersal of people from the vicinity of a building so that they are no longer in danger from fire or smoke or both. (A window is not acceptable as a final exit.)

**Fire door** – a door or shutter, provided for the passage of people, air or objects, which together with its frame and furniture as installed in a building, is intended (when closed) to resist the passage of fire or gaseous products of combustion or both, and is capable of meeting specified performance criteria to those ends. (It may have one or more leaves, and the term includes a cover or other form of protection to an opening in a fire-resisting wall or floor, or in a structure surrounding a protected shaft.)

**Fire-resisting** (fire resistance) – the ability of a component or construction of a building to satisfy for a stated period of time, some or all of the appropriate criteria specified in the relevant Part of BS 476.

**Fire safety duties** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Fire safety information** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Fire separating element** – a compartment wall, compartment floor, cavity barrier and construction enclosing a protected shaft, protected escape route and a place of special fire hazard.

**Fire stop** – a seal provided to close an imperfection of fit or design tolerance between elements or components, to restrict or prevent the passage of fire and smoke.



---

**Firefighting lift** – a lift designed to have additional protection, with controls that enable it to be used under the direct control of the Fire and Rescue Service when fighting a fire.

**Firefighting lobby** – a protected lobby for providing access from a firefighting stairway to the accommodation area and to any associated firefighting lift.

**Firefighting shaft** – a protected enclosure containing a firefighting stairway, firefighting lobbies and, if provided, a firefighting lift together with its machinery.

**Firefighting stairway** – a protected stairway communicating with the accommodation area only through a firefighting lobby.

**Flat** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Gallery** – a floor, including a raised storage area, which is less than one-half of the floor area of the space into which it projects and is open both above and below to that space.

**Habitable room** – any room in a dwelling other than a kitchen, utility room, bathroom, shower room, dressing room or WC.

**Hallway** (Hall) – a circulation space inside the entrance to a dwelling used solely to give access to rooms and, where provided, a stairway.

**Heat alarm** – a device containing within one housing all the components, except possibly the energy source, necessary for detecting heat and giving an audible alarm.

**Inner room** – a room from which escape is possible only by passing through another room (access room).

**Internal linings** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Materials of limited combustibility** – materials which comply with paragraph 1.9 or 1.10.

**Means of escape** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Measurement** –

- (a) the rules for measuring area, cubic capacity, number of storeys, height of a building and height to a storey are given in paragraph B.1; and
- (b) the methods for measuring occupant capacity, travel distance, and the width of a doorway, escape route and stairway are given in Section 2.

**Non-combustible material** – a material which complies with paragraph 1.7 or 1.8.

**Notional boundary** – a boundary presumed to exist between buildings on the same site (see paragraph 5.9).

---

**Open spatial planning** – the internal arrangement of a building in which more than one storey or level is contained in one undivided volume, e.g. split-level floors and galleries. For the purposes of this Technical Booklet there is a distinction between open spatial planning and an atrium space.

**Perimeter** (of building) – the maximum aggregate plan perimeter excluding any wall separating buildings, found by vertical projection onto a horizontal plane.

**Pipe** – (for the purposes of Section 4) includes pipe fittings and accessories; and excludes a flue pipe and a pipe used for ventilating purposes (other than a ventilating pipe for an above ground drainage system).

**Place of safety** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Places of special fire hazard** – oil-filled transformer and switchgear rooms, boiler rooms, storage space for fuel or other highly flammable substances and rooms housing a fixed internal combustion engine. Additionally in schools – laboratories, technology rooms with open heat sources, kitchens and stores for PE mats (including landing mats and crash mats) or chemicals.

**Platform floor** (access or raised floor) – a floor supported by a structural floor, but with an intervening concealed space which is intended to house services.

**Pressurization** – a method of protecting escape routes against the ingress of smoke by maintaining the air within them at pressures higher than those in adjacent parts of the building.

**Principal habitable room** – the habitable room in a dwelling that is normally the most frequently used room for general daytime living purposes.

**Protected circuit** – an electrical circuit protected against fire.

**Protected corridor or lobby** – a corridor or lobby which is adequately protected from fire in adjoining accommodation by fire-resisting construction.

**Protected entrance hall or landing** – a circulation area consisting of a hall or space within a dwelling, enclosed with fire-resisting construction (other than any part which is an external wall or building).

**Protected shaft** – a shaft which enables people, air or objects to pass from one compartment to another, and which is enclosed with fire-resisting construction.

**Protected stairway** – a stairway discharging through a final exit to a place of safety (including any exit passageway between the foot of the stair and the final exit) that is adequately enclosed with fire-resisting construction.

**Purpose group** – a classification of buildings or compartments according to the purpose to which they are intended to be put (see paragraph A.2).

**Refuge** – an area that is adequately protected from fire in adjoining accommodation by fire-resisting construction and which is served directly by a safe route to a storey exit, thus constituting a temporarily safe place for people to use as part of their personal emergency evacuation plan.

---

**Relevant boundary** – the boundary which the side of the building faces, (and/or coincides with) and which is parallel, or at an angle of not more than 80°, to the side of the building. A notional boundary can be a relevant boundary.

**Relevant building** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 23(4) in Part B of the Building Regulations.

**Relevant change of use** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Relevant premises** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

**Rooflight** – a domelight, lantern light, skylight, ridge light, glazed barrel vault or other element intended to admit daylight through a roof.

**Room** – (for the purposes of Section 3) an enclosed space within a building that is not used solely as a circulation space. (The term includes not only conventional rooms, but also cupboards that are not fittings, and large spaces such as warehouses, and auditoria. The term does not include voids such as ducts, ceiling voids and roof spaces.)

**Separated part** (of a building) – a form of compartmentation in which a part of a building is separated from another part of the same building by a compartment wall. The wall runs the full height of the part, and is in one vertical plane.

**Single storey building** – a building consisting only of a ground storey and any basement storeys. (A separated part which consists of a ground storey only, with a roof to which access is only provided for repair or maintenance, may be treated as a single storey building.)

**Smoke alarm** – a device containing within one housing all the components, except possibly the energy source, necessary for detecting smoke and giving an audible alarm.

**Storey exit** – a final exit, or a doorway giving direct access into a protected stairway, firefighting lobby, or external escape route. (In some circumstances a door in a compartment wall may be considered as a storey exit, e.g. in a building designed for progressive horizontal evacuation.)

**Specified attachment** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 22 in Part B of the Building Regulations.

**Storey** – includes –

- (a) in a building of Purpose Group 5 – a gallery [other than the exceptions given in paragraph B.1(c)]; and
- (b) in a building of any purpose group – a roof which is accessible unless it is accessible only for maintenance and repair.

**Suspended ceiling** (fire-protecting) – a ceiling suspended below a floor, which contributes to the fire resistance of the floor.

**Thermoplastic material** – a synthetic polymeric material which can be classified in accordance with paragraph 3.4 or 3.5.

---

**Travel distance** – the actual distance to be travelled by a person from any point within the floor area to the nearest storey exit, having regard to the layout of walls, partitions and fittings.

**Unprotected area** – in relation to a side or external wall of a building means –

- (a) a window, door or other opening;
- (b) any part of the external wall which has less than the relevant fire resistance set out in Table 4.1; and
- (c) any part of the external wall which has combustible material more than 1 mm thick attached or applied to its external face, whether for cladding or any other purpose.

**Wall** – for the purposes of Section 3 see paragraph 3.9.

---

## General guidance

### Buildings containing atria

- 1.2 For the purposes of this Technical Booklet the use of BS 5588-7 is relevant only where the atrium breaches compartmentation.

### Inclusive design

- 1.3 The fire safety aspects of the Building Regulations are made for securing reasonable standards of health and safety of people in and about buildings. This is intended to include all people, including people with disabilities.

People, regardless of disability or age should be able to gain access to buildings and use their facilities, both as visitors and as people who live or work in them. Part R of the Building Regulations requires reasonable provision in this respect. As such the fire safety measures incorporated into a building will need to take account of the needs of all those people who may have access to the building. It is not appropriate, except in exceptional circumstances, to presume that certain groups of people will be excluded from a building because of its use.

The provisions set out in this Technical Booklet are considered to be a reasonable standard for most buildings. However, there may be some people whose specific needs are not addressed. In some situations additional fire safety measures may be needed to accommodate these needs. Such measures should be considered on a case by case basis.

### Fire safety management

- 1.4 The provisions of this Technical Booklet have been written on the assumption that fire safety in the building concerned will be adequately managed.

**Building Regulations do not impose any requirements on the management of a building.** Fire safety management is controlled by other legislation such as the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 and the associated Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010 for workplaces deemed to be relevant premises.

However, in developing an appropriate fire safety design for a building it may be necessary to consider the way in which it will be managed. A design which relies on an unrealistic or unsustainable management regime cannot be considered to have met the requirements of the Regulations.

Once the building is in use the management regime should be maintained and any variation in that regime should be the subject of a suitable risk assessment. Failure to take proper management responsibility may result in the prosecution of an employer, building owner or occupier under legislation such as the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006.

---

## Fire Safety in Protected buildings

- 1.5 Some variation of the provisions set out in this booklet may be appropriate where Part E applies to protected buildings, where adherence to the guidance in this booklet might prove to be unduly restrictive. In such cases it would be appropriate to take into account a range of fire safety features, some of which are contained in this booklet and some of which are not addressed in any detail and to set these against an assessment of the hazards and risks peculiar to the particular case.

### Property protection

- 1.6 Building Regulations are intended to ensure that an adequate standard of life safety is provided in case of fire. The protection of property, including the building itself, may require additional measures and insurers will in general seek their own measures if they are to accept the insurance risk. Such measures (e.g. locking doors on escape routes) must not negate or reduce the level of protection or performance of any provision in this Technical Booklet.

### Performance of materials, products and structures

- 1.6A Much of the guidance in this document is given in terms of performance classifications in relation to British or European Standards. In such cases, it will be necessary to demonstrate that a system or product can meet the relevant performance classification. This will be achieved if the system or product –
- (a) is in accordance with a specification or design that has been shown by specific test(s) to be capable of meeting that performance classification;
  - (b) has been assessed from relevant test evidence, in lieu of a specific test(s), as being capable of meeting that performance classification; or
  - (c) has been designed by using relevant design standards that are capable of meeting that performance classification.

Note: Some products are subject to Classification Without Further Testing (CWFT). For the purposes of this technical booklet, such products can be considered to have been shown to be capable of meeting a performance specification as per paragraph 1.6A(a).

- 1.6B Any test evidence used to demonstrate the fire performance classification of a product or system should be carefully checked to ensure that it is applicable to the intended use. Small differences in detail, such as fixing method, joints, dimensions, the introduction of insulation materials and air gaps (ventilated or not), can significantly affect the performance.
- 1.6C They should only be carried out where sufficient relevant test evidence is available. Relevant test evidence is unlikely to be provided by test standards which have different classification criteria.

- 
- 1.6D Where it is proposed to assess the classification of a product or system in lieu of carrying out a specific test (as in paragraph 1.6A(b)), this should be done in accordance with the relevant standard for extended application for the test in question and should include details of the test evidence that has been used to support the assessment.

For performance classifications where there is no specific standard for extended application, assessment reports should be produced in accordance with the principles of BS EN 15725 and should include details of the test evidence that has been used to support the assessment. Further information on best practice is provided in the Passive Fire Protection Forum Guide to undertaking technical assessments of fire performance of construction products based on fire test evidence.

Note: Regulation 23(2) limits components used in or on the external walls of relevant buildings to materials achieving European Classification A2-s1, d0 or Class A1 (see Section 5). Assessments cannot be used to demonstrate compliance with this requirement.

- 1.6E Tests and assessments should be carried out by organisations with the necessary expertise. For example, organisations listed as “notified bodies” in accordance with the European Construction Products Regulation or organisations listed as ‘UK Approved bodies’ under the UK Market Conformity Assessment Bodies (UKMCAB) may be appropriate. Laboratories accredited by United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) for the relevant test standard can be assumed to have the necessary expertise. Clarification may be sought from UKAS to confirm the accreditation held is relevant and the scope and competence is sufficient.

Note: Standard fire tests do not directly measure fire hazard. They measure or assess the response of a material or system to exposure to one or more aspects of fire conditions. Performance in fire tests is only one of a number of factors that should be taken into account.

### **Reaction to Fire**

- 1.6F Reaction to fire relates to the degree to which a product will contribute by its own decomposition, to a fire under specified conditions. Under the European classification system, products, other than floorings, are classified as A1, A2, B, C, D, E or F (with class A1 being the highest performance and F being the lowest) in accordance with BS EN 13501-1. Class F is assigned when a product fails to attain class E. Untested products cannot be classified in accordance with BS EN 13501-1.
- 1.6G The classes of reaction to fire performance of A2, B, C and D are accompanied by additional classifications related to the production of smoke (s1, s2, s3) with s1 indicating the lowest production. The classes of reaction to fire performance of A2, B, C, D and E are accompanied by additional classifications related to the production of flaming droplets/particles (d0, d1, d2) with d0 indicating the lowest production.

Note: When a classification includes s3, d2 this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

### **Non-combustible materials**

- 
- 1.7 A non-combustible material is under National classification –
- (a) a material classified as non-combustible when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 4;
  - (b) a material which when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11 does not flame and does not cause a rise in temperature on either the centre (specimen) thermocouple or the furnace thermocouple;
  - (c) a material which is either totally inorganic or does not contain more than 1% by weight or volume, of organic material; or
  - (d) concrete bricks or blocks meeting BS EN 771-3.
- 1.8 A non-combustible material is under European classification –
- (a) a material classified as Class A1 in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests, when tested to –
    - (i) BS EN ISO 1182 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test*; and
    - (ii) BS EN ISO 1716 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the gross heat of combustion*; or
  - (b) a product made from one or more of the materials considered as Class A1 without the need for testing, as defined in Commission Decision 2003/424/EC and 2000/605/EC amending decision 96/603/EC of 4th October 1996 establishing the list of products belonging to class A1 ‘No contribution to fire’ provided for in the Decision 94/611/EC implementing Article 20 of the Council Directive 89/106/EEC on construction products. None of the materials should contain more than 1.0% by weight or volume (whichever is lower) of homogeneously distributed organic material.

### **Materials of limited combustibility**

- 1.9 A material of limited combustibility is under National classification –
- (a) a material which can be classified as non-combustible under paragraphs 1.7(a) to (d);
  - (b) a material with a non-combustible core not less than 8 mm thick having combustible facings (on one or both sides) not more than 0.5 mm thick;
  - (c) a material of density not less than 300 kg/m<sup>3</sup> which, when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11, does not flame or increase the temperature on the furnace thermocouple by more than 20°C; or
  - (d) in the case of insulation referred to in Table 4.3 and paragraph 5.4 - a material of density less than 300 kg/m<sup>3</sup> which, when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11 does not flame for more than 10 seconds and the rise in temperature is not more than 35°C on the centre (specimen) thermocouple and not more than 25°C on the furnace thermocouple.
- 1.10 A material of limited combustibility is under European classification –
- (a) any material or product classified as non-combustible under paragraph 1.8(a) or (b); or



- 
- (b) a material or product classified as Class A2-s3,d2 or higher in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 *Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests when tested to –*
- (i) BS EN ISO 1182 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test*; or
  - (ii) BS EN ISO 1716 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the **gross** heat of combustion*, and BS EN 13823 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item*.

— where a classification includes ‘s3,d2’ this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

### **Classification**

- 1.11 National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

## **Alternative approaches**

### **Risk-based design using BS 9999**

- 1.12 BS 9999 *Code of practice for fire safety in the design, management and use of buildings* gives flexibility to fire safety design through the use of a structured approach to risk-based design, where designers can take account of varying physical and human factors. Within its scope, this document may be used as an alternative approach to following the relevant methods and standards set out in this booklet.

Where designers elect to use BS 9999 in this manner they will need to demonstrate that the relevant requirements of Part E have been met.

### **Fire safety engineering**

- 1.13 A fire safety engineering approach which takes into account the total fire safety package within a building may provide an adequate level of fire safety. Indeed, it may be the only viable approach to the achievement of a satisfactory standard in some large and complex buildings but it is beyond the scope of this Technical Booklet. Fire safety engineering may also be suitable for solving a problem with an aspect of the building design which otherwise follows the provisions in this booklet.

BS 7974 *Fire safety engineering in buildings* and supporting published documents provide a framework and guidance on the design and assessment of fire safety measures in buildings. Following the discipline of BS 7974 should enable designers and building control officers to be aware of the relevant issues, the need to consider the complete fire safety system and to follow a disciplined analytical framework.

---

Where designers elect to use a fire engineered approach they will need to demonstrate that the relevant requirements of Part E have been met.



## Section 2 Means of escape

- 2.1 The provisions in this Section have been formulated using assumptions regarding the likely source and growth of a fire and are based on recognised criteria for means of escape. These assumptions and criteria are outlined in paragraph 0.18.

The provisions are divided into –

- (a) those applying to dwellinghouses – paragraphs 2.2 to 2.33;
- (b) those applying to flats – paragraphs 2.34 to 2.36;
- (c) those applying to all types of buildings other than dwellings –
  - (i) the horizontal part of the escape route – paragraphs 2.40 to 2.59; and
  - (ii) the vertical part of the escape route – paragraphs 2.60 to 2.83; and
- (d) general provisions applying to dwellinghouses and all other types of buildings except flats – paragraphs 2.84 to 2.103.

### Dwellinghouses

#### Introduction

- 2.2 The provisions for means of escape in typical one and two storey dwellinghouses (i.e. those with no storey more than 4.5 m above ground level) are limited to the common provisions given in paragraphs 2.4 to 2.11.

With increasing height, provisions additional to the common provisions are necessary, as stairs may become impassable before evacuation is complete and the use of emergency egress windows becomes increasingly hazardous. The additional provisions are given in paragraphs 2.12 to 2.16.

Where an external escape route is provided the provisions contained in paragraphs 2.58, 2.59 and 2.76 should also apply.

- 2.3 The provisions for automatic fire detection and warning are given in paragraphs 2.23 to 2.33. The installation of smoke and heat alarms or automatic fire detection and alarm systems can significantly increase the level of safety by automatically giving early warning of fire.

#### Common provisions

- 2.4 Every storey (including a basement storey) in a dwellinghouse which does not have alternative escape routes leading to their own exits should have an emergency egress window for escape or rescue purposes.

An emergency egress window that serves a storey should –

- (a) where the storey is an upper storey – be located to facilitate rescue by ladder from the ground;

- (b) where it is a dormer or roof window – be positioned as shown on Diagram 2.1;
- (c) be located remote from the escape route; and
- (d) comply with paragraph 2.9.

Where a basement storey contains a habitable room and does not have alternative escape routes it should be served by a protected stairway that extends to a final exit.

- 2.5 Every habitable room, on an upper storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level that does not have alternative escape routes, should have an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9 for escape purposes.

However, an emergency egress window may serve two such habitable rooms provided that –

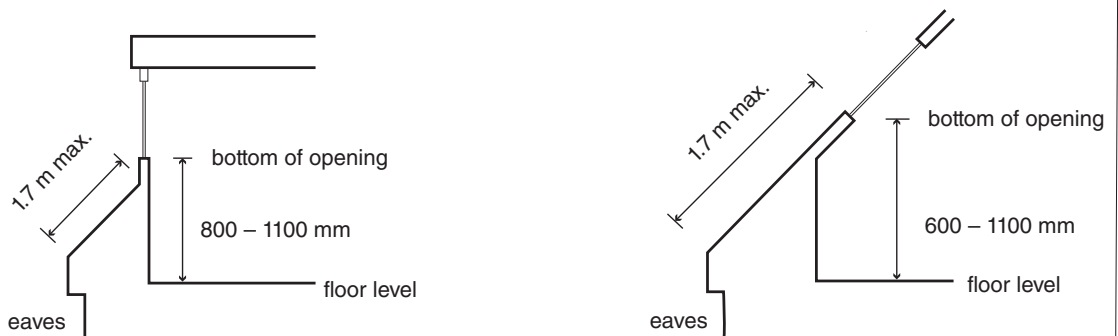
- (a) both rooms have their own access to the stairway enclosure; and
- (b) it is possible to gain access, via a communicating door between the rooms, to the window without passing through the stairway enclosure.

- 2.6 A habitable room should open directly onto a hallway (including a corridor or landing leading to the hallway) which leads to the entrance without passing through any room (except a porch), other than where the habitable room –

- (a) has an alternative escape route;
- (b) is on a storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level and the habitable room has an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9; or
- (c) is part of a roof space conversion which complies with paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22.

**Diagram 2.1 Emergency egress windows from roof space conversions of 2 storey dwellinghouses**

see para 2.4 and 2.22(b)



**(a) Dormer window**

**(b) Roof window (rooflight)**

**Notes :**

- (1) Clear window opening not less than 0.33 m<sup>2</sup> in area and at least 450 mm high and at least 450 mm wide.
- (2) Window located to facilitate rescue by ladder from the ground.
- (3) The window may be in the end wall of the dwellinghouse instead of the roof as shown.

---

## Access rooms to inner rooms

- 2.7 A habitable room may be an access room to any inner room. A kitchen should not be an access room to an inner room other than –
- (a) to a utility room or conservatory which has an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9; or
  - (b) where the kitchen and the inner room are on the same storey and the kitchen is part of an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit. See Diagram 2.2.
- 2.8 Where a habitable room, by virtue of a stairway discharging into it, is an access room to a habitable room on the storey above –
- (a) the upper storey should be not more than 4.5 m above ground level; and
  - (b) the foot of the stairway should be not more than 3 m from –
    - (i) a final exit; or
    - (ii) a door opening directly into a hallway (including a corridor leading to the hallway).

## Emergency egress windows

- 2.9 An emergency egress window should –
- (a) have a clear opening that is not less than 0.33 m<sup>2</sup> in area; and
  - (b) have a clear opening that is at least 450 mm high and at least 450 mm wide.

The lower edge of the window opening should be not less than 800 mm and not more than 1100 mm above the floor except in the case of a roof window where the lower edge of the window opening may be not less than 600 mm above the floor. For the purposes of this paragraph an emergency egress window should be taken to include a door which leads to an area (e.g. a balcony) from which a person could escape or be rescued. The minimum height to the lower edge of the opening should not apply to such a door.

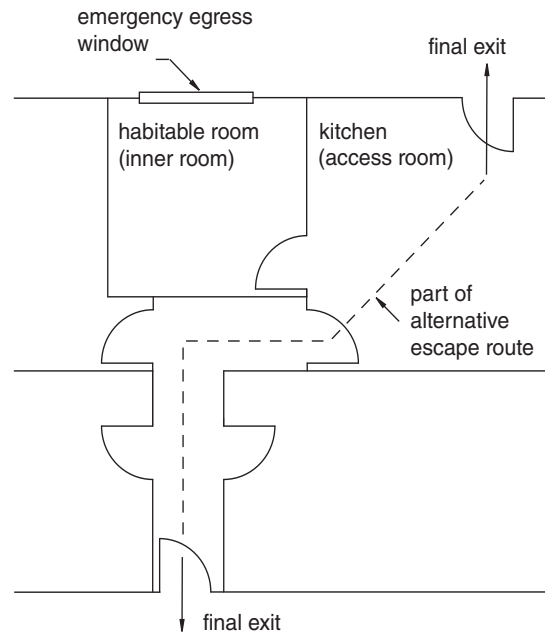
- 2.10 An emergency egress window should lead to a place that is free from the danger of fire and not lead to an enclosed yard or garden unless it has an area of relative safety which is not less than the height of the dwellinghouse from the dwellinghouse. An enclosed yard or garden is one from which there is no exit under the control of the occupants of the dwellinghouse.

## Sleeping galleries

- 2.11 Where a gallery for sleeping purposes is provided –
- (a) the gallery should be not more than 4.5 m above ground level;
  - (b) the distance between the foot of the access stair to the gallery and the door to the room containing the gallery should be not more than 3 m;
  - (c) the floor area of the gallery should be not more than 30 m<sup>2</sup>;
  - (d) an alternative escape route, or an emergency egress window which complies with paragraph 2.9 located remote from the access stair, should be provided where the distance from the head of the access stair to any point on the gallery is more than 7.5 m; and

## Diagram 2.2 Kitchen as access room

see para 2.7(b)



**Note:**  
storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level

- (e) any cooking facilities within the room containing the gallery should either –
  - (i) be enclosed with fire-resisting construction; or
  - (ii) be remote from the stair to the gallery and be positioned so that they do not prejudice the means of escape from the gallery.

### Provisions additional to the common provisions for a dwellinghouse with one storey more than 4.5 m above ground level

- 2.12 In a dwellinghouse with only one storey more than 4.5 m above ground level –
- (a) the top storey should –
    - (i) be separated from the lower storeys by fire-resisting construction; and
    - (ii) have an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit; or
  - (b) all storeys above the storey containing the final exit should be served by a protected stairway which either –
    - (i) extends to a final exit as shown in Diagram 2.3(a); or
    - (ii) leads to at least two escape routes at ground level, each leading to a final exit and separated from each other by fire-resisting construction and self-closing fire doors as shown in Diagram 2.3(b).

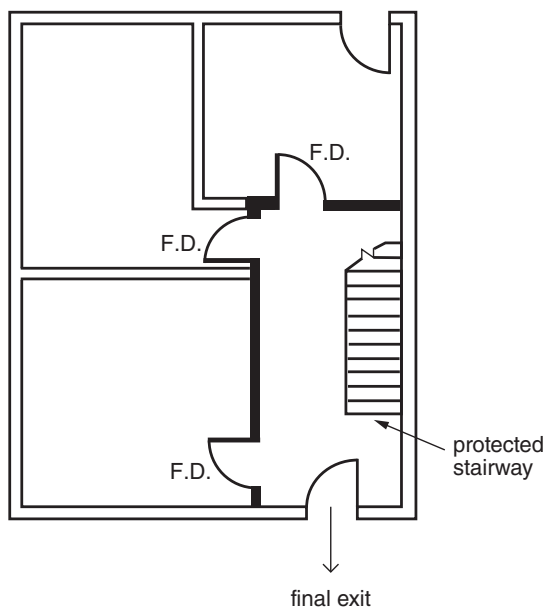
- 2.13 Where the storey which is more than 4.5 m above ground level is created by the conversion of the roof space of a two storey dwellinghouse the provisions of paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22 may be applied as an alternative to the provisions of paragraph 2.12.

**Provisions additional to the common provisions for a dwellinghouse with two or more storeys more than 4.5 m above ground level**

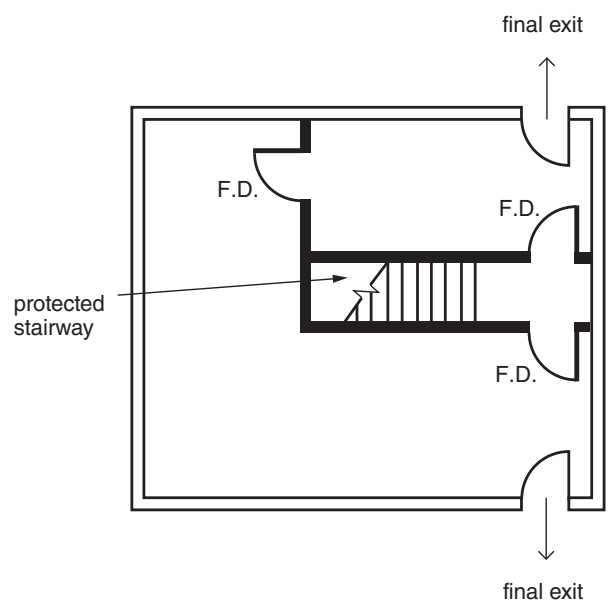
- 2.14 In a dwellinghouse with two or more storeys more than 4.5 m above ground level –
- (a) all storeys above the storey containing the final exit should be served by a protected stairway which complies with paragraph 2.12(b); and
  - (b) each storey that is over 7.5 m above ground level should have an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit. Where access to an alternative escape route is through the protected stairway, the protected stairway should be subdivided by fire-resisting construction at or about 7.5 m above ground level.

**Diagram 2.3 Alternative arrangements for final exits**

see para 2.12(b) and 2.18(a) & (b)





**(a) Protected stairway delivering directly to the final exit**



**(b) Protected stairway affording access to two independent escape routes**

**Key**

-  F.D. fire-resisting door
-  fire-resisting construction



---

## Ducted air circulation systems

- 2.15 In a dwellinghouse with a storey more than 4.5 m above ground level, any system of ducted air circulation should –
- (a) not be fitted with transfer grilles between any room and a protected stairway;
  - (b) not have supply and return grilles more than 450 mm above floor level;
  - (c) where air is ducted to a protected stairway – have the return air ducted back to the heater;
  - (d) where a duct passes through the enclosure to a protected stairway – have the joints between the duct and the enclosure fire-stopped; and
  - (e) where warm air heating is ducted – have a thermal cut out with maximum setting of 27°C, which turns off the heater and any circulation fan if the ambient temperature exceeds that setting.

## Passenger lifts

- 2.16 Where a passenger lift is provided and serves a storey more than 4.5 m above ground level it should either –
- (a) be located in the enclosure of a protected stairway; or
  - (b) be contained in a fire-resisting lift shaft.

## Roof space conversions

- 2.17 Where a roof space is to be converted to habitable accommodation, automatic fire detection and fire alarm in accordance with paragraph 2.23 and 2.24 should be provided and either –
- (a) the relevant provisions of paragraphs 2.4 to 2.15 should apply; or
  - (b) where the existing dwellinghouse has two storeys the provisions in paragraphs 2.18 to 2.22 may be followed provided that the new storey does not –
    - (i) exceed 50 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area; or
    - (ii) contain more than two habitable rooms.

Note – The general provisions of this Section apply to any other roof space conversion which adds a new storey to an existing dwellinghouse.

---

### **Enclosure of existing stairway**

- 2.18 The existing stairway should be enclosed by fire-resisting walls and either –
- (a) extend to a final exit as shown in Diagram 2.3(a); or
  - (b) lead to at least two escape routes at ground level, each delivering to a final exit and separated from each other by fire-resisting construction and self-closing fire doors as shown in Diagram 2.3(b).
- 2.19 Any glazing (whether new or existing) in the enclosure of the existing stairway, other than to a bathroom or sanitary accommodation, should be fire-resisting. (See Tables 2.8, 4.1 and 4.2.)
- 2.20 Other than where paragraph 2.18 requires a fire door, every doorway in the enclosure to the existing stairway should be fitted with an imperforate door. A door to a habitable room or a kitchen should be fitted with a self-closing device.

Where a new door is to be provided to an existing habitable room or kitchen it should be a fire door.

### **Fire separation of new storey**

- 2.21 The new storey should be separated from the rest of the dwellinghouse by fire-resisting construction. The new stairway should either –
- (a) rise as a continuation of the existing stairway and enclosure, in which case the stairway should be separated from the new accommodation by fire-resisting construction; or
  - (b) be separated from the existing stairway and the rest of the dwellinghouse by fire-resisting construction.
- Any door in new fire-resisting construction should be a self-closing fire door.
- 2.22 Each habitable room in the new storey should have –
- (a) an emergency egress window which complies with paragraph 2.9; or
  - (b) an emergency egress dormer window or roof window, of the size given in paragraph 2.9 positioned as shown in Diagram 2.1,

that is located to facilitate rescue from the ground by ladder.

However, an emergency egress window may serve both habitable rooms provided that –

- (i) each room has its own access to the stairway enclosure; and
- (ii) it is possible to gain access, via a communicating door between the rooms, to the window without passing through the stairway enclosure.

---

## Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellinghouses

- 2.23 A dwellinghouse should be provided with either –
- (a) smoke alarms complying with ~~BS 5446-1~~ **BS EN 14604** and a heat alarm or alarms complying with BS 5446-2 installed in accordance with paragraphs 2.25 to 2.33; or
  - (b) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade D2 Category LD2 standard including a smoke alarm or alarms in the principal **all** habitable rooms and a heat alarm or alarms in every kitchen.

**Note 1 – A higher standard of protection should be considered where occupants of a proposed dwelling would be at special risk from fire. Further advice on this is also given in BS 5839-6.**

**Note 2 – ~~BS 5446-1~~BS EN 14604** covers smoke alarms based on ionization chamber smoke detectors and optical smoke detectors. These different types of detector respond differently to smouldering and fast-flaming fires. Either type of detector is generally suitable. However, the choice of detector type should, if possible take into account the type of fire that might be expected and the need to avoid false alarms. Optical detectors tend to be less affected by low levels of ‘invisible’ particles, such as fumes from kitchens, that often cause false alarms. Accordingly, they are generally more suitable than ionization chamber detectors for installation in circulation spaces adjacent to kitchens.

- 2.24 Where any storey in a dwellinghouse is more than 200 m<sup>2</sup> in area the dwellinghouse should be provided with –
- (a) ~~where the number of storeys is not more than 3~~—an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade B **A** Category LD2 standard including a smoke detector or detectors in the principal **all** habitable rooms and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen.; ~~or~~
  - (b) ~~where the number of storeys is more than 3~~—an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade A Category LD2 standard including a smoke detector or detectors in the principal **all** habitable rooms and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen.

Basement storeys should be counted in this provision.

### **Extensions and/or alterations**

- 2.24A Where new habitable rooms or a kitchen is provided, a fire detection and alarm system should be installed where —
- (a) the room is provided above or below the ground storey; or
  - (b) the room is provided at the ground storey without a final exit.
- 2.24B Smoke alarms should be provided in accordance to paragraphs 2.23 to ensure any occupants of the new rooms are warned of any fire.

---

## Provision of smoke alarms and heat alarms

- 2.25 At least one smoke alarm should be provided –
- (a) in the circulation route or routes on each storey; and
  - (b) in the principal ~~all~~ habitable rooms,

and at least one heat alarm should be provided in every kitchen. The smoke and heat alarms should be located to comply with the provisions of paragraphs 2.27 to 2.32.

Smoke alarms and heat alarms should be interconnected so that they all give an audible alarm when any one of them is activated.

The maximum number of smoke alarms and heat alarms which may be interconnected should not exceed that given in the manufacturer's instructions.

A back-up power source to each smoke alarm and heat alarm should be provided by either –

- (i) a primary or secondary battery; or
- (ii) a capacitor.

## Installation of smoke alarms and heat alarms

- 2.26 Smoke alarms and heat alarms should be permanently wired to either –
- (a) a regularly used lighting circuit; or
  - (b) a circuit which –
    - (i) is separately fused at the distribution board;
    - (ii) serves only smoke alarms and heat alarms; and
    - (iii) where a residual current device is used – is not connected to a residual current device which is also used by any other circuit.

Smoke alarms and heat alarms may operate at a low voltage via a mains transformer. The cable for the power supply to, and interconnection of, the smoke alarms need not have special fire-survival properties.

- 2.27 Smoke alarms should be located in the circulation route or routes of a dwellinghouse so that there is one –
- (a) not more than 3 m from every bedroom door;
  - (b) not more than 7.5 m from every door to a living room or kitchen; and
  - (c) where a circulation route on a storey is more than 15 m long – not more than 15 m from another smoke alarm on the same circulation route and storey.

- 
- 2.28 Smoke alarms should be located in ~~a principal~~ **all** habitable rooms so that no point in the room is more than 7.5 m from the nearest smoke alarm. Heat alarms should be located in a kitchen so that no point in the kitchen is more than 5.3 m from the nearest heat alarm.
- 2.29 A smoke alarm or heat alarm should be located so that it is –
- (a) either on a ceiling and not less than 300 mm from a wall or light fitting, or where designed for wall mounting on a wall and not less than 150 mm, or more than 300 mm from the ceiling and the sensitive element should not be below the level of a door opening;
  - (b) not less than 300 mm from, and not directly above, a heater or an air conditioning ventilator;
  - (c) on a surface which is normally at the ambient temperature for the space it bounds; and
  - (d) easily and safely accessible.
- 2.30 Where a smoke alarm is mounted on a ceiling, it should be located so that its sensitive element is not less than 25 mm or more than 600 mm below the ceiling.
- 2.31 Where a heat alarm is mounted on a ceiling, it should be located so that its sensitive element is not less than 25 mm or more than 150 mm below the ceiling.
- A heat alarm should not be located above a cooking appliance.
- Note – The guidance given in this paragraph and paragraph 2.30 applies to ceilings that are predominately flat and horizontal.
- 2.32 A smoke alarm should not be located in a kitchen, garage or other place where steam, condensation or fumes could give false alarms.
- 2.33 Where dwellinghouses are part of a sheltered dwelling scheme with a warden or supervisor, the fire detection and fire alarm system within each dwellinghouse should be connected to the warden's or supervisor's central monitoring point so as to –
- (a) give an audible warning of the detection of smoke or heat in any dwellinghouse; and
  - (b) enable the identification of the dwellinghouse involved.

## Flats

### Means of escape

- 2.34 The means of escape in a flat should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-1.

### Smoke control of common escape routes

- 2.34A It is probable that some smoke will get into the common corridor or lobby from a fire in a flat.

- 
- 2.34B There should therefore be some means of ventilating the common corridors/lobbies to control smoke and so protect the common stairs. This means of ventilation offers additional protection to that provided by the fire doors to the stair, as well as some protection to the corridors/lobbies.
- 2.34C Ventilation can be natural (paragraphs 2.34D to 2.34L) or mechanical (paragraph 2.34M).

### **Smoke control of common escape routes by natural smoke ventilation**

#### **Small buildings with no storey more than 11m above ground level and with a single stair**

- 2.34D Small buildings having a single stair and no storey more than 11m above ground level should either —
- (a) if the building has a common lobby approach to the dwellings should have —
    - (i) an openable vent having a minimum free area of 1 m<sup>2</sup>, that is inserted at the highest level practicable at each floor level within the staircase; or
    - (ii) an openable vent having a minimum free area of 1 m<sup>2</sup> at the top of the staircase that can be remotely operated at fire and rescue service access level.
  - (b) if the building has no common lobby approach to the dwellings should have an automatically opening vent (AOV) with a minimum free area of 1 m<sup>2</sup> at the top of the staircase that operates on detection of smoke anywhere within the staircase enclosure. The maximum travel distance in the communal areas should also be limited to 4.5 m.

The smoke control strategy given in (a) should not be used with an open-plan flat layout design.

- 2.34E AOVs should conform to BS EN 12101-2.

#### **Buildings with a storey more than 11m above ground level and served by a single stair**

- 2.34F The corridor or lobby next to the stair should have an (AOV). The location of the vent should comply with both of the following —
- (a) be as high as practicable; and
  - (b) be positioned so the top edge is at least as high as the top of the door to the stair.
- 2.34G Smoke vents should comply with one of the following —
- (a) They should be located on an external wall with minimum free area of 1.5 m<sup>2</sup>; or
  - (b) They should discharge into a vertical smoke shaft, closed at the base, that meets all of the following criteria —
    - (i) The shaft should conform to the following conditions —
      - (aa) Have a minimum cross-sectional area of 1.5m<sup>2</sup> (minimum dimension 0.85 m in any direction);

- (bb) Open at roof level, minimum 0.5 m above any surrounding structures within 2 m of it horizontally; and
  - (cc) Extend a minimum of 2.5 m above the ceiling of the highest storey served by the shaft;
- (ii) The free area of all the following vents should be a minimum of 1 m<sup>2</sup> in the following places –
- (aa) From the corridor or lobby into the shaft;
  - (bb) At the opening at the head of the shaft; and
  - (cc) At all internal locations within the shaft (e.g. safety grilles);
- (iii) The smoke shaft should be constructed from a class A1 material. All vents should be fitted with a fire and smoke damper (see paragraph 4.44). The shaft should be vertical from base to head, with a maximum of 4m at a maximum inclined angle of 30 degrees;
- (iv) If smoke is detected in the common corridor or lobby, both of the following should occur –
- (aa) Simultaneous opening of vents on the storey where the fire is located, at the top of the smoke shaft and to the stair; and
  - (bb) Vents from the corridors or lobbies on all other storeys should remain closed, even if smoke is subsequently detected on storeys other than where the fire is located.

2.34H A vent to the outside with a minimum free area of 1 m<sup>2</sup> should be provided from the top storey of the stair.

2.34J Smoke vents on the storey where the fire is initiated, and the vent at the head of the stair, should be activated by smoke detectors in the common parts.

#### **Multiple stair buildings**

2.34K The smoke control provisions in buildings with more than one stair should be the same as those for single stair buildings with a storey more than 11m above ground level. However, smoke vents to the exterior may be activated manually. The manual control switch system should open the vent at the head of the stair before, or at the same time as, the vent on the storey where the fire is located. Smoke detection is not required for ventilation purposes in this instance.

2.34L Where the vents discharge into a smoke shaft, the vents on the fire floor, at the top of the smoke shaft and on the stairway should all be configured to open simultaneously upon automatic activation of the system in the common corridor or lobby. The vents from the corridors or lobbies on all other storeys should be configured to remain closed.

#### **Smoke control of common escape routes by mechanical ventilation**

2.34M Guidance on the design of smoke control systems that use mechanical smoke extraction or pressure differentials is available in BS EN 12101-6.

---

## Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in flats

- 2.35 Each individual flat should be provided with either –
- (a) smoke alarms complying with ~~BS 5446-1~~ **BS EN 14604** and a heat alarm or alarms complying with BS 5446-2 installed in accordance with paragraphs 2.25 to 2.32; or
  - (b) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade ~~D2~~ **Category LD2** standard including a smoke alarm or alarms in ~~the principal~~ **all** habitable rooms and a heat alarm or alarms in every kitchen.
- 2.36 Where any storey in a flat is more than 200 m<sup>2</sup> in area, the flat should be provided with an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade ~~B-A~~ **Category LD2** standard, including a smoke detector or detectors in ~~the principal~~ **all** habitable rooms and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen.

### Extensions and/or alterations

- 2.36A Where new habitable rooms or a kitchen is provided, a fire detection and alarm system should be installed in accordance with paragraph 2.24A – 2.24B

## Buildings other than dwellings

- 2.37 In buildings other than dwellings the number of escape routes needed depends on the number of occupants (occupant capacity). In some cases a room or a storey is designed to accommodate a known number of people; in others the occupant capacity should be calculated by dividing the area of the room or storey (excluding stairways, lifts and sanitary accommodation) by the appropriate floor space factor given in Table 2.2. Where the occupant capacity is calculated for rooms the occupant capacity of a storey is the sum of the occupant capacities of the rooms on that storey. The occupant capacity of a building or part of a building is the sum of the occupant capacities of the storeys in that building or part.
- 2.38 In buildings other than dwellings a suitable fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 should be installed. The factors which have to be considered when assessing what category of fire detection and fire alarm system is to be provided will vary from one set of premises to another. Therefore the appropriate category will need to be considered on a case by case basis. Automatic detection should be provided where required by the provisions in this Section and in Sections 4 and 6.
- Note – General guidance on the category of automatic fire detection that may need to be provided within a building can be found in Table A.1 of BS 5839-1.
- 2.39 Where a building contains areas in different purpose groups the means of escape from any area which is of Purpose Group 1(a), 2 or 5 should be independent of the means of escape from other areas of the building.



---

## Horizontal part of the escape route

- 2.40 The provisions in paragraphs 2.41 to 2.59 relate to horizontal escape routes leading to storey exits. They are mainly concerned with providing more than one escape route (except in the circumstances described in paragraph 2.41), limiting the distance to be travelled, and ensuring that the routes are of adequate width.

### Single escape routes

- 2.41 Alternative escape routes should be provided from all parts of the building other than in the following circumstances where a single route is permitted –
- (a) areas from which a storey exit can be reached within the maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3, provided that no room in this situation has an occupant capacity of more than 60 people, or 30 people if the building is an Institution [Purpose Group 2(a)]; and
  - (b) a storey with an occupant capacity of no more than 60 people provided that a storey exit can be reached within the maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3.

### Travel distance

- 2.42 Whether there are alternative escape routes or only a single one, the travel distance to the nearest storey exit should not exceed the maximum relevant travel distance given in Table 2.3.

Note – It is only the distance to the nearest storey exit that should be so limited. The distance from the same point in the storey to any other storey exit may be longer.

Where the initial part of an escape route is in one direction only and leads to a point from which escape is possible in two directions (e.g. as shown in Diagram 2.4), the initial part should not exceed the maximum travel distance in one direction only, and the overall travel distance should not exceed the maximum travel distance in more than one direction.

### Number of escape routes and exits

- 2.43 The number of escape routes and exits should be not less than the number given in Table 2.1 for the relevant occupant capacity of the room or storey as appropriate. The escape routes and exits should be arranged such that the travel distances given in Table 2.3 are not exceeded.

**Table 2.1 Minimum number of escape routes and exits from a room or storey**

<b>Maximum occupant capacity</b>	<b>Minimum number of escape routes/exits</b>
60	1 <sup>(1)</sup>
600	2
1000	3
2000	4
4000	5
7000	6
11000	7
16000	8
More than 16000	8 <sup>(2)</sup>

Notes:

- (1) See paragraph 2.41 for the circumstances in which single exits and escape routes are acceptable.
- (2) Plus 1 per 5000 people (or part thereof) over 16000.

**Table 2.2 Floor space factors**

Item	Type of accommodation <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	Floor space factor m <sup>2</sup> per person
1	Standing spectator areas	0.3
2	Amusement arcade, assembly hall (including a general purpose place of assembly), bar (including a lounge bar), bingo hall, dance floor or hall, club, crush hall, venue for pop concert and similar events, queuing area	0.5
3	Concourse (other than in a shopping complex) <sup>(3)</sup>	0.75
4	Committee room, common room, conference room, dining room, licensed betting office (public area), lounge (other than a lounge bar), meeting room, reading room, restaurant, staff room, waiting room	1.0 <sup>(4)</sup>
5	Exhibition hall	1.5
6	Shop sales area <sup>(5)</sup> , skating rink	2.0
7	Art gallery, dormitory, factory production area, office (open-plan exceeding 60 m <sup>2</sup> ), workshop	5.0
8	Kitchen, library, office (other than in item 7 above), shop sales area <sup>(6)</sup>	7.0
9	Bedroom or study-bedroom	8.0
10	Bed-sitting room, billiards room	10.0
11	Storage and warehouse accommodation	30.0
12	Car park	Two people per parking space

**Notes:**

- (1) Where accommodation is not directly covered by the descriptions given, a reasonable value based on a similar use may be selected.
- (2) If there is to be mixed use, the most onerous factor should be applied.
- (3) Refer to Section 4 of BS 5588-10 for detailed guidance on the calculation of occupancy and means of escape in common areas in shopping complexes.
- (4) Alternatively, the occupant capacity may be taken as the number of fixed seats provided, if the occupants will normally be seated.
- (5) Shops, other than those included under item 8, including – supermarkets and department stores (all sales areas), shops for personal services such as hairdressing and shops for the delivery or collection of goods for cleaning, repair or other treatment or for members of the public themselves carrying out such cleaning, repair or other treatment.
- (6) Shops, excluding those in covered shopping complexes and department stores, trading predominantly in furniture, floor coverings, cycles, perambulators, large domestic appliances or other bulky goods, or trading on a wholesale self-selection basis (cash and carry).

**Table 2.3 Limitations on travel distances**

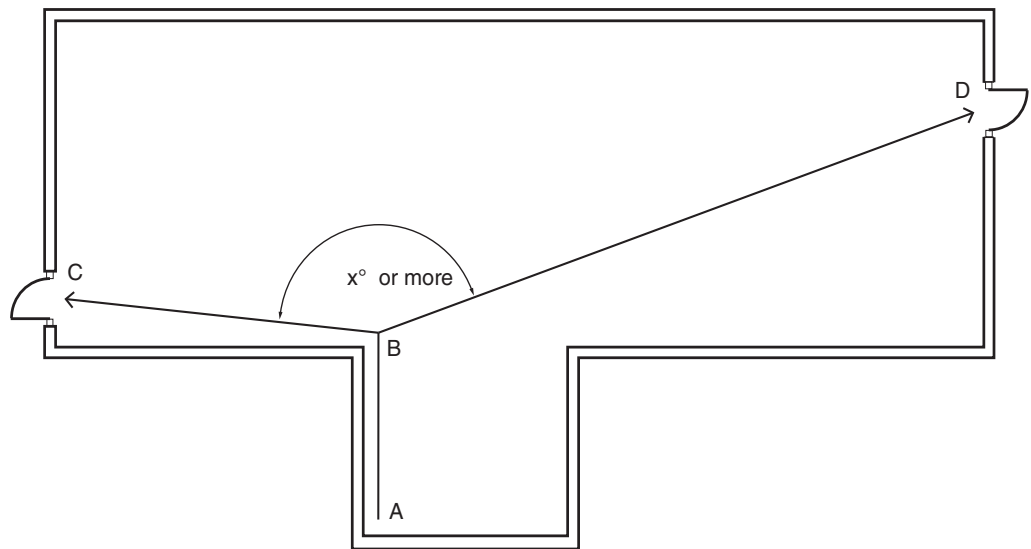
Purpose group	Use of the building or part of the building	Maximum travel distance <sup>(1)</sup> where travel is possible in –	
		One direction only (m)	More than one direction (m)
<b>2(a)</b>	Institutional	9	18
<b>2(b)</b>	Other residential –		
	(a) in bedrooms	9 <sup>(2)</sup>	18 <sup>(2)</sup>
	(b) in bedroom corridors	9	35
	(c) elsewhere	18	35
<b>3</b>	Office	18 <sup>(3)</sup>	45
<b>4</b>	Shop and commercial <sup>(4)</sup>	18 <sup>(3)</sup>	45
<b>5</b>	Assembly and recreation –		
	(a) buildings primarily for disabled people	9	18
	(b) schools	18	45
	(c) areas with seating in rows	15	32
	(d) elsewhere	18	45
<b>6</b>	Industrial <sup>(5)</sup>	25	45
<b>7</b>	Storage and other non-residential <sup>(5)</sup>	25	45
<b>2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7</b>	Place of special fire hazard <sup>(6)</sup>	9 <sup>(2)</sup>	18 <sup>(2)</sup>
	Crèche	9	18
<b>2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7</b>	Plant room or rooftop plant –		
	(a) distance within the room	9	35
	(b) escape route not in open air (overall travel distance)	18	45
	(c) escape route in open air (overall travel distance)	60	100

**Notes:**

- (1) The dimensions in the Table are travel distances. If the internal layout of partitions, fittings, etc. is not known when plans are deposited, direct distances may be used for assessment. The direct distance should be taken as two-thirds of the travel distance.
- (2) Maximum part of travel distance within the room.
- (3) In the case of a small building described in paragraph 2.68 the maximum travel distance in one direction only may be –  
 (a) increased to 27 m in the ground storey; and  
 (b) measured to the foot of the unprotected stairway in the basement or to the head of the unprotected stairway in the first storey.
- (4) Maximum travel distances within shopping malls are given in BS 5588-10. Guidance on associated smoke control measures is given in BRE report *Design methodologies for smoke and heat exhaust ventilation* (BR 368). BS 5588-10 applies more restrictive provisions to shop units with only one exit in covered shopping complexes.
- (5) In industrial and storage buildings the appropriate travel distance depends on the level of fire risk associated with the processes and materials being used. The dimensions given above assume that the building will be of normal fire risk. If the building is high risk, then lesser distances of 12 m in one direction and 25 m in more than one direction, should apply.
- (6) Places of special fire hazard are listed in the definitions in paragraph 1.1.

## Diagram 2.4 Travel distance in single direction leading to alternative escape routes

see para 2.42



Note:

If angle CBD is  $x^\circ$  or more, alternative escape routes are available from B provided that –

- (a) either AC or AD is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in more than one direction; and
- (b) AB is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in one direction only.

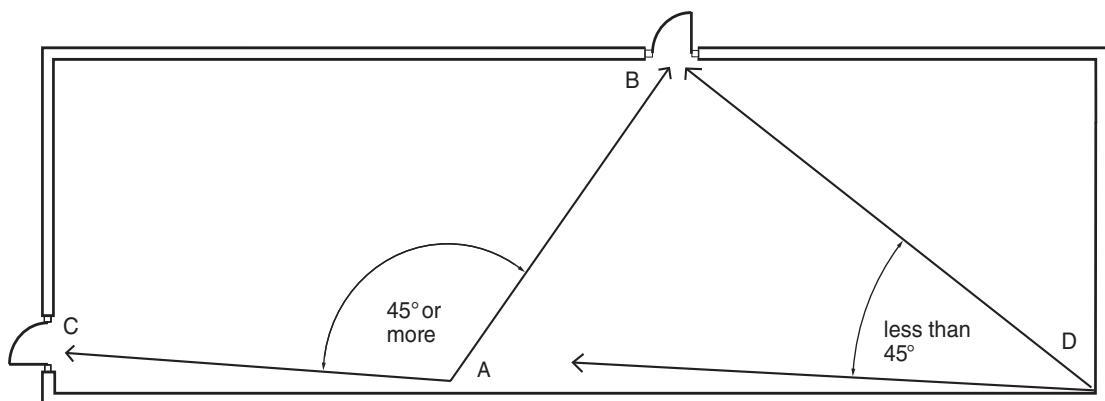
$x^\circ = 45^\circ$  plus  $2.5^\circ$  for each metre or part of a metre travelled from A to B

## Alternative escape routes

- 2.44 To prevent alternative escape routes being simultaneously unusable they should either –
- (a) be  $45^\circ$  or more apart (see Diagram 2.5); or
  - (b) if less than  $45^\circ$  apart be separated from each other by fire-resisting construction.

**Diagram 2.5** Alternative escape routes

see para 2.44(a) and Diagram 2.4



Note:

Acceptable alternative escape routes are available from A (so that either AB or AC is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in more than one direction) but not from D (therefore see Diagram 2.4).

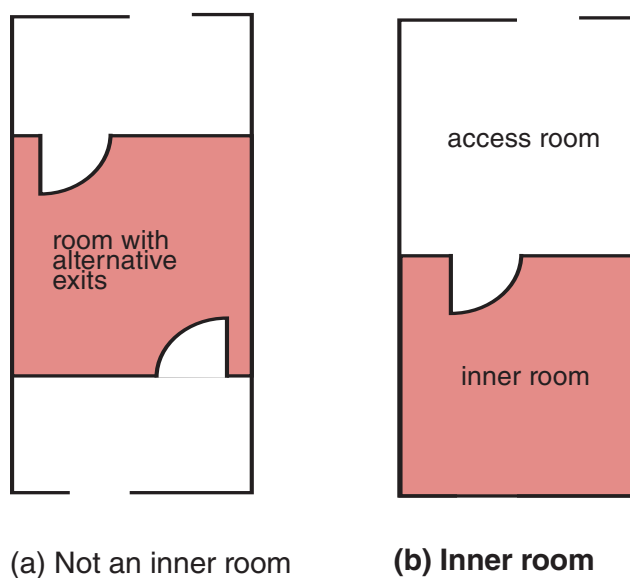
## Inner rooms

- 2.45 An inner room is only permitted where –
- (a) the number of occupants of the inner room is not more than 60 people (or in the case of a building in Purpose Group 2(a), 30 people);
  - (b) it is not a bedroom;
  - (c) the escape route from the inner room does not pass through more than one access room;
  - (d) the distance from any point in the inner room to the nearest exit from the access room does not exceed the appropriate maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3;
  - (e) the access room is not a place of special fire hazard and is in the control of the same occupier as the inner room; and
  - (f) one of the following applies –
    - (i) that part of the enclosure separating the inner and access room is stopped at least 500 mm below the ceiling;
    - (ii) a vision panel of not less than 0.1 m<sup>2</sup> is provided in the enclosure to the inner room so that a fire in the access room will be visible from the inner room at an early stage; or
    - (iii) the access room is fitted with a suitable automatic detection and alarm system to warn the occupants of the inner room of the outbreak of a fire in the access room.

See Diagram 2.6.

**Diagram 2.6 Inner rooms and access rooms**

see para 2.45



---

## Crèches

- 2.46 Where a building has an ancillary use for child care the accommodation for children should be located in the ground storey adjacent to an external wall and should have not less than two exits, one of which should be a final exit.

However, where location on the ground storey is not possible it should be located as near ground level as possible provided that –

- (a) it is adjacent to an external wall and it has not less than two exits, one of which should be a storey exit;
- (b) it is not located above the level at which the parents or guardians are accommodated unless their escape route is through the upper level; and
- (c) it is not located on a basement storey unless it has an open side and a final exit at ground level.

## Access to storey exits

- 2.47 In any storey which has more than one escape stairway the escape routes should be arranged so that people do not have to pass through one stairway to reach another. However, it is acceptable to pass through the protected lobby of one stairway to reach another escape stairway.

## Open spatial planning

- 2.48 Escape routes should not be prejudiced by open connections between floors such as at an escalator.

An escape route should not be within 5 m of the open connection unless –

- (a) the direction of travel is away from the opening; or
- (b) there is an alternative escape route which does not pass within 5 m of the open connection.

See Diagram 2.7.

## Planning of storey exits in a central core

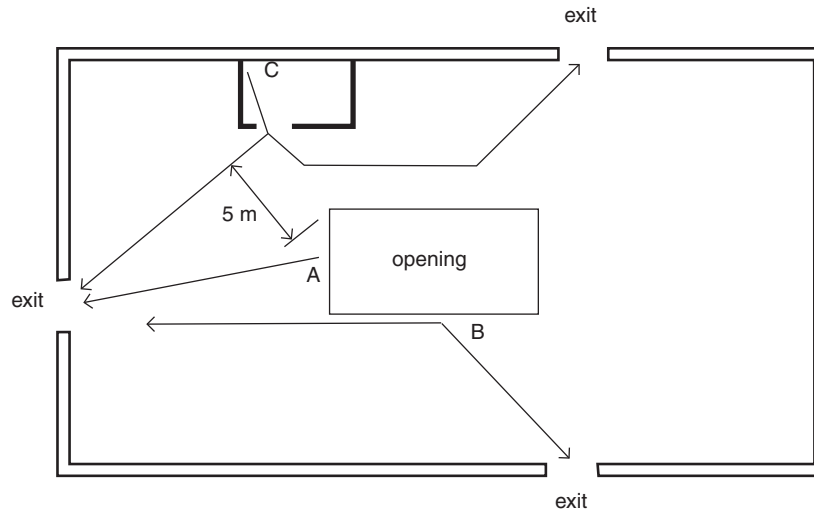
- 2.49 A building with more than one storey exit in a central core should be planned so that the storey exits are remote from each other and not linked by a lift hall, lobby, or undivided corridor.

Where the central core is separated from the accommodation by a corridor, the corridor should be subdivided by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated screens) so that the storey exits are separated as in Diagram 2.8.



## Diagram 2.7 Escape routes in relation to open connections between floors

see para 2.48



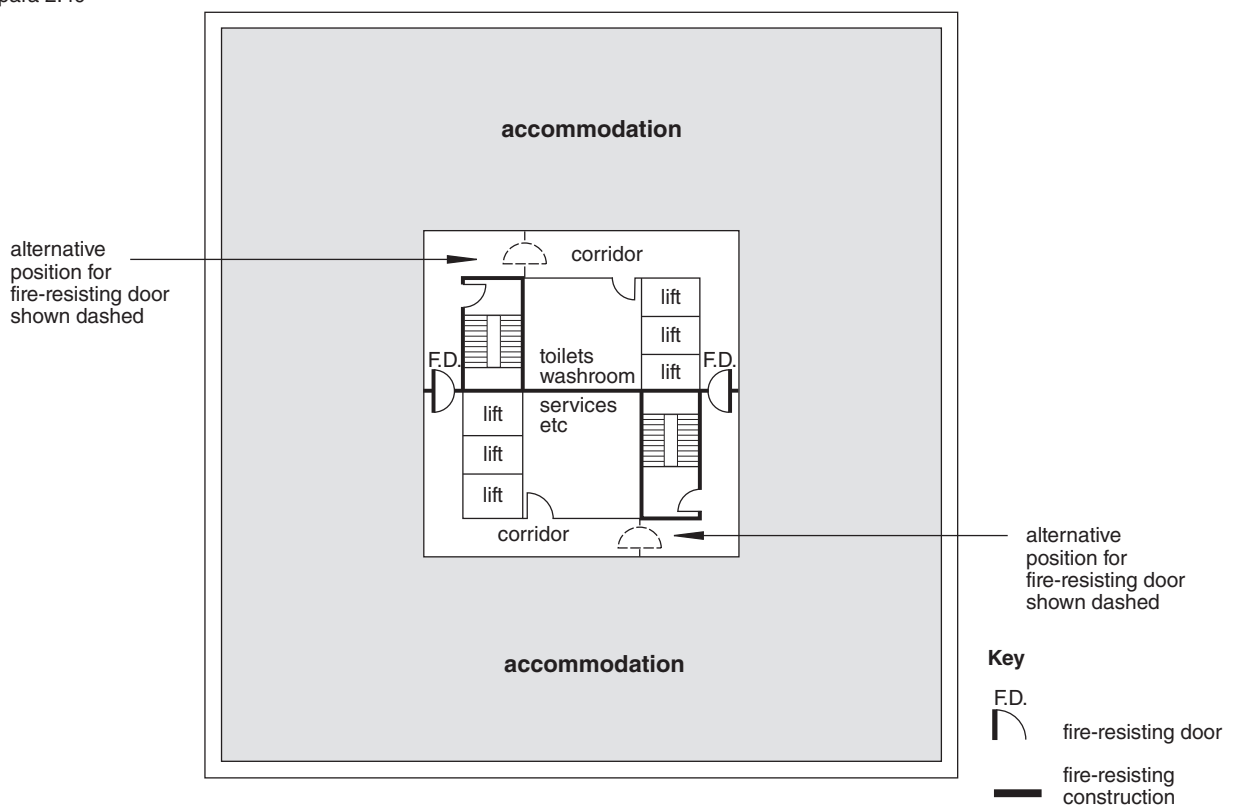
Note:

From A and B at least one direction of travel is away from the opening.

From C where the initial direction of travel is towards the opening, one of the escape routes is not less than 5 m from the opening.

## Diagram 2.8 Storey exits in a central core

see para 2.49



## Storeys divided into different uses

- 2.50 Where a storey has an ancillary use for the consumption of food or drink by customers, the area given over to that use should –
- (a) have not less than two escape routes; and
  - (b) have escape routes that lead directly to a storey exit without entering a kitchen or place of special fire hazard.

## Storeys divided into different occupancies

- 2.51 Where a storey is divided into two or more occupancies (i.e. ownerships, tenancies or similar) the means of escape from one occupancy should not pass through any other occupancy.

However, where the means of escape includes a corridor common to two or more occupancies then either it should be a protected corridor, or a fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard, should be installed.

## Width of escape routes and storey exits

- 2.52 The width of an escape route or storey exit should be not less than the minimum width given in Table 2.4, for the appropriate number of people assessed as being likely to use it. There should be no projections into escape routes other than handrails with a projection of less than 100 mm and stringers, skirtings and architraves of less than 30 mm, on either or both sides. (Note – for the purposes of Part H stair widths are measured between handrails.) The width of a storey exit should be measured in accordance with B1(g) of Appendix B.

**Table 2.4 Widths of escape routes and storey exits**

Maximum number of people <sup>(1)</sup>	Minimum width <sup>(2)(3)</sup> mm
50	750 <sup>(4)</sup>
110	850
220	1100
More than 220	5 per person <sup>(5)</sup>

Notes:

- (1) Assessed as being likely to use the escape route or storey exit.
- (2) In schools the minimum width of corridors in pupil areas should be 1050 mm where escape is in more than one direction and 1600 mm where escape is in one direction only.
- (3) Part R may require greater widths.
- (4) May be reduced to 530 mm for gangways between fixed storage racking, other than in public areas in Purpose Group 4 buildings.
- (5) 5 mm per person does not apply to an opening serving less than 220 persons.

---

Where there is a single escape route and storey exit their capacity should be not less than the number of occupants of the storey.

Where two or more escape routes and storey exits are provided it should be assumed that one of them may not be available due to fire or smoke. Therefore, each storey exit in turn should be discounted in order to ensure that the capacity of the remaining storey exits is adequate for the total number of people needing to use them. [This may have implications for the width of stairs because they should be not less than the width of any storey exit leading onto them – see paragraph 2.63(b)].

- 2.53 The total number of persons which two or more available storey exits (after discounting) can accommodate is found by adding the maximum number of persons determined for each storey exit width. For example in Table 2.4 three available exits each 850 mm wide will accommodate  $110 \times 3 = 330$  persons (not the 510 persons accommodated by a combined exit width of 2550 mm).

### **Separation of circulation routes from escape stairways**

- 2.54 A protected stairway should not form part of the primary circulation route between different parts of the building at the same level. However, it is acceptable for a protected lobby to form part of the primary circulation route.

### **Protected corridors**

- 2.55 A corridor that is part of the means of escape should be a protected corridor where it is –
- (a) a corridor serving one or more bedrooms;
  - (b) a corridor from which escape is in one direction only (i.e. a dead end corridor); or
  - (c) common to two or more different occupancies other than where a fire detection and alarm system is installed in accordance with paragraph 2.51.

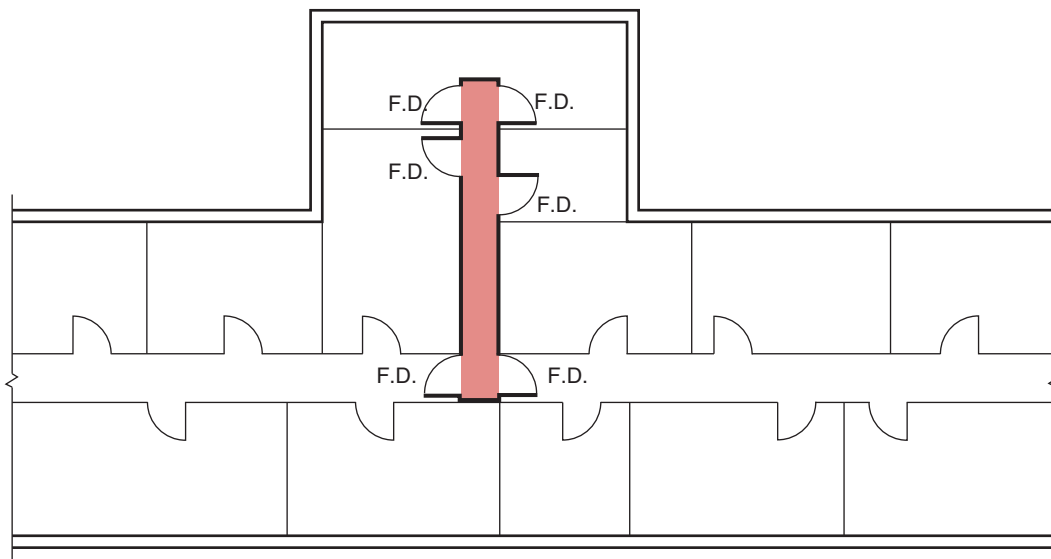
### **Subdivision of corridors**

- 2.56 Where a corridor exceeding 12 m in length connects two or more storey exits, it should be subdivided by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated fire-resisting screens) approximately mid-way between the storey exits so that no undivided part is common to two or more storey exits. This is to reduce the likelihood of smoke making alternative routes impassible before all occupants have escaped. For corridors around a central core see paragraph 2.49.

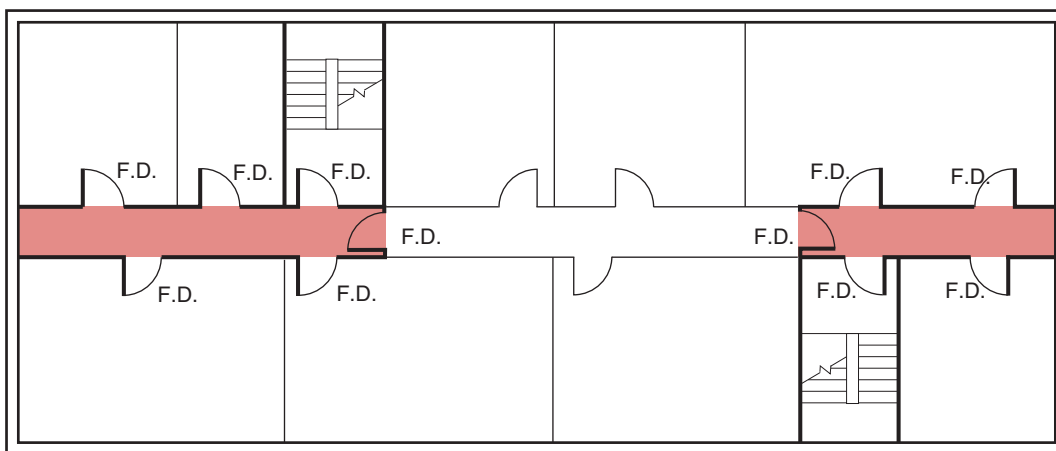
Where a dead end portion of a corridor exceeding 4.5 m in length leads to a point where alternative escape routes are available, the dead end portion should be extended and separated by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated fire-resisting screens) from the remainder of the corridor as shown in Diagram 2.9. However, where the stairways and corridors are protected by a pressurization system complying with BS EN 12101-6, such separation is not necessary.

**Diagram 2.9 Dead end corridors**

see para 2.56






**(a) T-junction with main corridor**



**(b) Continuation past stairway**

**Key**

-  F.D. fire-resisting door
-  fire-resisting construction
-  protected corridor

---

## Enclosure of corridors that are not protected corridors

- 2.57 Where a corridor which is part of an escape route, but is not a protected corridor, is enclosed by partitions, those partitions provide some defence against the spread of smoke in the early stages of a fire and should be carried up to the underside of the structural floor or to a suspended ceiling. In the latter case cavity barriers should be provided in accordance with paragraph 4.35. Every opening into a room should be fitted with a door which need not be a fire door.

## External escape routes

- 2.58 Where an external escape route, other than a stair, is beside an external wall of the building, that part of the external wall within 1.8 m (measured horizontally) of the escape route should be of fire-resisting construction 1.1 m above and 9 m below the level of the route as shown in Diagram 2.11 (see page 61).

## Escape over flat roofs

- 2.59 Where more than one escape route is available from a storey, (or part of a building where appropriate) one of those routes may be by way of a flat roof, provided that –
- (a) the route does not serve –
    - (i) a building of Purpose Group 2(a); or
    - (ii) in a building of any other purpose group – an area intended for use by members of the public;
  - (b) the flat roof is part of the same building from which escape is being made;
  - (c) the route across the flat roof leads to a storey exit or external escape route;
  - (d) the part of the flat roof forming the escape route and its supporting structure, together with any opening in the roof within 3 m of the escape route, is fire-resisting; and
  - (e) the route is defined and guarded by walls and/or protective barriers which comply with Part H.

---

## Vertical part of the escape route

- 2.60 The provisions in paragraphs 2.61 to 2.76 relate to the vertical escape down or up escape stairways towards a final exit. They are mainly concerned with providing a sufficient number of escape stairs of adequate aggregate width and their protection.

### Number of escape stairways

- 2.61 The number of escape stairways in a building, or part of a building is determined by the provisions in –
- (a) paragraph 2.39 regarding independent escape routes from areas in certain uses;
  - (b) paragraphs 2.41 and 2.43 regarding the design of the horizontal part of the escape route;
  - (c) paragraphs 2.63 and 2.64 regarding the width of stairs and the discounting of a stairway respectively; and
  - (d) Section 6 regarding the provision and location of firefighting stairways.

### Single escape stairways

- 2.62 Where independent escape routes are not required from areas in different purpose groups, in accordance with paragraph 2.39, a single escape stairway may serve –
- (a) a basement which is permitted to have a single escape route in accordance with paragraph 2.41; or
  - (b) a building which has no storey with a floor level more than 11 m above ground level, and in which every storey is permitted to have a single escape route in accordance with paragraph 2.41.

### Width of escape stairs

- 2.63 An escape stair should be wide enough to accommodate the appropriate number of people assessed as being likely to use it.

This width depends on the number of stairways provided and whether the escape strategy is based on simultaneous evacuation (see paragraph 2.65) or phased evacuation (see paragraph 2.66).

In any event an escape stair should –

- (a) be not less than the appropriate dimension given in Table 2.5;
- (b) be not less than the width required for any storey exit giving access to it;
- (c) not reduce in width at any point on its way to the final exit; and
- (d) not exceed 1400 mm if the vertical extent of the escape stair is more than 30 m, unless it is at least 1800 mm and it is provided with a central handrail. In such a case the width on each side of the handrail should be considered separately for the purpose of assessing stair capacity. (Research indicates that people prefer to stay within reach of a handrail when making a prolonged descent, consequently the centre part of a wide stair is little used and could be hazardous).

**Table 2.5 Minimum width of escape stairs**

Situation of stair		Maximum number of people served <sup>(1)</sup>	Minimum stair width (mm)
1	In a Purpose Group 2(a) building (unless it will only be used by staff)	150	1000
2	In a Purpose Group 5 building and serving an area used for assembly purposes (unless the area is less than 100 m <sup>2</sup> )	220	1100
3	In a building of any other purpose group and serving an area with an occupancy of more than 50	Over 220	Note <sup>(2)</sup>
4	Any stair not described above	50	800

Notes:

(1) Assessed as likely to use the stair in a fire emergency.

(2) See Table 2.6 for sizing stairs for simultaneous evacuation and Table 2.7 for phased evacuation.

### Discounting of escape stairways

- 2.64 Whether simultaneous or phased evacuation is used, where two or more escape stairways are provided it should be assumed that one of them may not be available due to fire or smoke. Therefore, each stairway in turn should be discounted in order to ensure that the capacity of the remaining stairways is adequate for the total number of people needing to use them.

This discounting provision need not be applied where –

- (a) the escape stairways are approached on each storey (except the topmost storey), through a protected lobby; or
- (b) the escape stairways are protected by pressurization systems designed in accordance with BS EN 12101-6,

however, discounting storey exits still needs to be considered (see paragraph 2.52).

### Simultaneous evacuation

- 2.65 In a building or part of a building designed for simultaneous evacuation the escape stairways should have the capacity to allow all floors to be evacuated simultaneously and a suitable fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1, should be installed.

Simultaneous evacuation should be used for –

- (a) a basement;
- (b) a building containing open spatial planning;
- (c) a building of Purpose Group 2; and
- (d) a building of Purpose Group 5.

Where simultaneous evacuation is to be used the capacity of an escape stairway should be either –

- (i) in a building of not more than 10 storeys and for basements – that given for the appropriate width of escape stairs in Table 2.6; or
- (ii) in a building of more than 10 storeys – that derived from the formula –

$P = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(n - 1)$  for stairs not less than 1100 mm wide,  
where

P = the number of people that can be accommodated;

w = the width of the escape stair (in metres); and

n = the number of storeys served by the stair.

**Table 2.6 Capacity of escape stairways for simultaneous evacuation**

Number of floors served	Maximum number of people accommodated on one stair of width								
	1000 mm	1100 mm	1200 mm	1300 mm	1400 mm	1500 mm	1600 mm	1700 mm	1800 mm
1	150	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360
2	190	260	285	310	335	360	385	410	435
3	230	300	330	360	390	420	450	480	510
4	270	340	375	410	445	480	515	550	585
5	310	380	420	460	500	540	580	620	660
6	350	420	465	510	555	600	645	690	735
7	390	460	510	560	610	660	710	760	810
8	430	500	555	610	665	720	775	830	885
9	470	540	600	660	720	780	840	900	960
10	510	580	645	710	775	840	905	970	1035



---

## Worked examples

A building comprises 12 storeys of offices (ground + 11). What is the minimum width needed for the stairs serving the office floors with a population of 1200 people (excluding the ground floor population which does not use the stairs), using simultaneous evacuation? Two stairs satisfy the travel distance limitations.

- (a) The population is distributed evenly.

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). Therefore, if both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

$$P = 1200/2 = 600, n = 11$$

From the formula –

$$600 = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(11 - 1)$$

$$600 = 200w + (50w - 15)(10)$$

$$600 = 200w + 500w - 150$$

$$750 = 700w$$

$$w = 1.07 \text{ m (1070 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs should be at least 1070 mm wide. But this needs to be increased to 1100 mm as the formula applies to stairs 1100 mm or wider (see paragraph 2.65).

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 109 people in Table 2.4).

- (b) The population is not distributed evenly (e.g. 1000 people occupy floors 1 to 9, and 200 occupy floors 10 to 11).

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). If both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

- (i) To find the width of the stairs serving floors 10 to 11 –

$$P = 200/2 = 100, n = 2$$

From the formula –

$$100 = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(2 - 1)$$

$$100 = 200w + (50w - 15)(1)$$

$$100 = 200w + 50w - 15$$

$$115 = 250w$$

$$w = 0.46 \text{ m (460 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs between the 9th floor landing and the top floor should be at least 460 mm. But this needs to be increased to 1100 mm as the formula applies to stairs 1100 mm or wider (see paragraph 2.65).

---

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 100 people in Table 2.4).

(ii) To find the width of the stairs serving floors 1 to 9 –

$$P = 1200/2 = 600, n = 9$$

From the formula:

$$600 = 200w + 50 (w - 0.3) (9 - 1)$$

$$600 = 200w + (50w - 15) (8)$$

$$600 = 200w + 400w - 120$$

$$720 = 600w$$

$$w = 1.20 \text{ m (1200 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs between the 9th floor landing and the ground floor should be at least 1200 mm wide.

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 111 people in Table 2.4).

### Phased evacuation

2.66 In certain buildings it may be advantageous to design the escape stairways on the concept of phased evacuation. With phased evacuation the first people to be evacuated are those on the floor of the fire and the floor above together with those in the building who have reduced mobility.

Subsequently, if there is a need to evacuate more people, it should be done two floors at a time.

In such a building, or part of a building –

- (a) every escape stairway should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor at each storey, other than at a top storey consisting exclusively of plant rooms;
- (b) a protected lobby at each storey should be provided to the approach to every lift that is not within the enclosure of a protected stairway other than at a top storey consisting exclusively of plant rooms;
- (c) every floor should be a compartment floor;
- (d) an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of ~~BS 5306-2~~ or BS EN 12845, should be installed throughout the building where the building has a storey more than 30 m above ground level;
- (e) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system, to BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard, should be installed;
- (f) a voice alarm system to BS 5839-8 should be installed throughout the building, or part of the building; and
- (g) an emergency voice communication system to BS 5839-9 should be installed with a master station at fire and rescue access level (see Section 6) and an outstation on every storey.

The minimum width of a stair for phased evacuation should be that given in Table 2.7 for the appropriate maximum number of people on the most heavily occupied storey.

### Worked example

A building comprises 12 storeys of offices (ground + 11). What is the minimum width needed for the stairs serving the office floors with a population of 1200 people (excluding the ground floor population which does not use the stairs), using phased evacuation? Two stairs satisfy the travel distance limitations.

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). Therefore if both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

The population is divided equally therefore –

The number of people per storey is  $(1200/11) = 109$ .

Each stair must be able to accommodate half the maximum number of people in each storey  $(109/2) = 55$  people.

From Table 2.7 the width of 1 stair to accommodate 55 people is 1000 mm (maximum capacity 100 people).

Both stairs need to be not less than 1000 mm wide.

This width will also be adequate when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 and the consequent need to comply with paragraph 2.63 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for people in Table 2.4).

**Table 2.7 Minimum width of escape stairs for phased evacuation**

Maximum number of people in any storey <sup>(1)</sup>	Stair width <sup>(2)</sup> (mm)
100	1000
120	1100
130	1200
140	1300
150	1400
160	1500
170	1600
180	1700
190	1800

Notes:

(1) Where the number of people (P) on the most heavily occupied storey is more than 190, the minimum width of the escape stair (W mm) should be calculated from  $W = (P \times 10) - 100$ .

(2) Where the stair serves a storey more than 30 m above ground level the width should not exceed 1400 mm [see paragraph 2.63(d)].

---

## Protection of escape stairways

- 2.67 An escape stairway requires protection in order that it may provide an area of relative safety during a fire evacuation. The provisions for protecting an internal escape stairway are given in paragraphs 2.69 to 2.73 and further provisions apply when an escape stairway penetrates a compartment floor (see paragraph 4.23) or is a firefighting stairway (see paragraphs 6.3 to 6.6).

An accommodation stairway may form part of an internal route to a storey exit or final exit provided that the travel distance complies with paragraph 2.42 and the number of people involved is low.

- 2.68 An unprotected stairway may be used as an escape stairway in a small building provided that –
- (a) the building is of Purpose Group 3 or 4 and is not used for bar or restaurant purposes;
  - (b) the building is designed for single occupancy;
  - (c) the building comprises not more than a basement, ground and first storey;
  - (d) the floor area of any storey is not more than 90 m<sup>2</sup>;
  - (e) the stair does not connect more than two storeys; and
  - (f) the stair discharges not more than 3 m from a final exit.

## Protected lobbies and protected corridors

- 2.69 A protected lobby or protected corridor should be provided to every escape stairway on every storey in a building other than the top storey where –
- (a) the escape stairway is the only escape stairway serving the building (or part of the building) and the building (or part of the building) has more than one storey above or more than one storey below the storey containing the final exit from the escape stairway;
  - (b) the escape stairway serves a storey more than 18 m above ground level;
  - (c) the building is designed for phased evacuation and the top storey consists exclusively of plant rooms; or
  - (d) the discounting stairway provisions have not been used in calculating escape stair widths as permitted by paragraph 2.64.

A protected lobby should also be provided between an escape stairway and a place of special fire hazard, and that lobby should have either not less than 0.4 m<sup>2</sup> of permanent ventilation or be protected from the ingress of smoke by a mechanical smoke control system.

---

## Exits from protected stairways

- 2.70 Every protected stairway should discharge either –
- (a) directly to a final exit; or
  - (b) to a protected exit passageway leading only to a final exit. Where the stairway is lobbied, any door openings in the walls enclosing the protected exit passageway should be similarly lobbied.

Where the escape route from an escape stairway also forms the escape route from the ground and/or basement storey its width should be increased accordingly.

## Separation of adjoining protected stairways and protected exit passageways

- 2.71 Where two or more protected stairways or protected exit passageways adjoin they should be separated by an imperforate enclosure.

## Use of space within protected stairways

- 2.72 A protected stairway, other than a firefighting stairway (see Section 6), should not contain any accommodation or services other than –
- (a) sanitary accommodation or wash rooms provided that they are not used as a cloakroom;
  - (b) a lift, provided that in a building (or part of a building) with a single escape stairway the lift motor room is over the lift shaft or outside the protected stairway; and
  - (c) where it is not the only protected stairway in a building (or part of a building) –
    - (i) a reception desk or enquiry office area having an area of not more than 10 m<sup>2</sup> and located at ground or access level; or
    - (ii) a cupboard formed by fire-resisting construction.

## Basement stairways

- 2.73 Where an escape stairway forms part of the only escape route from an upper storey of a building (or part of a building) it should not serve a basement storey.

Where there is more than one escape stairway from an upper storey of a building (or part of a building) at least one should terminate at ground storey level. Other stairways may connect to a basement storey provided that they are protected at each basement level by a protected lobby or protected corridor.

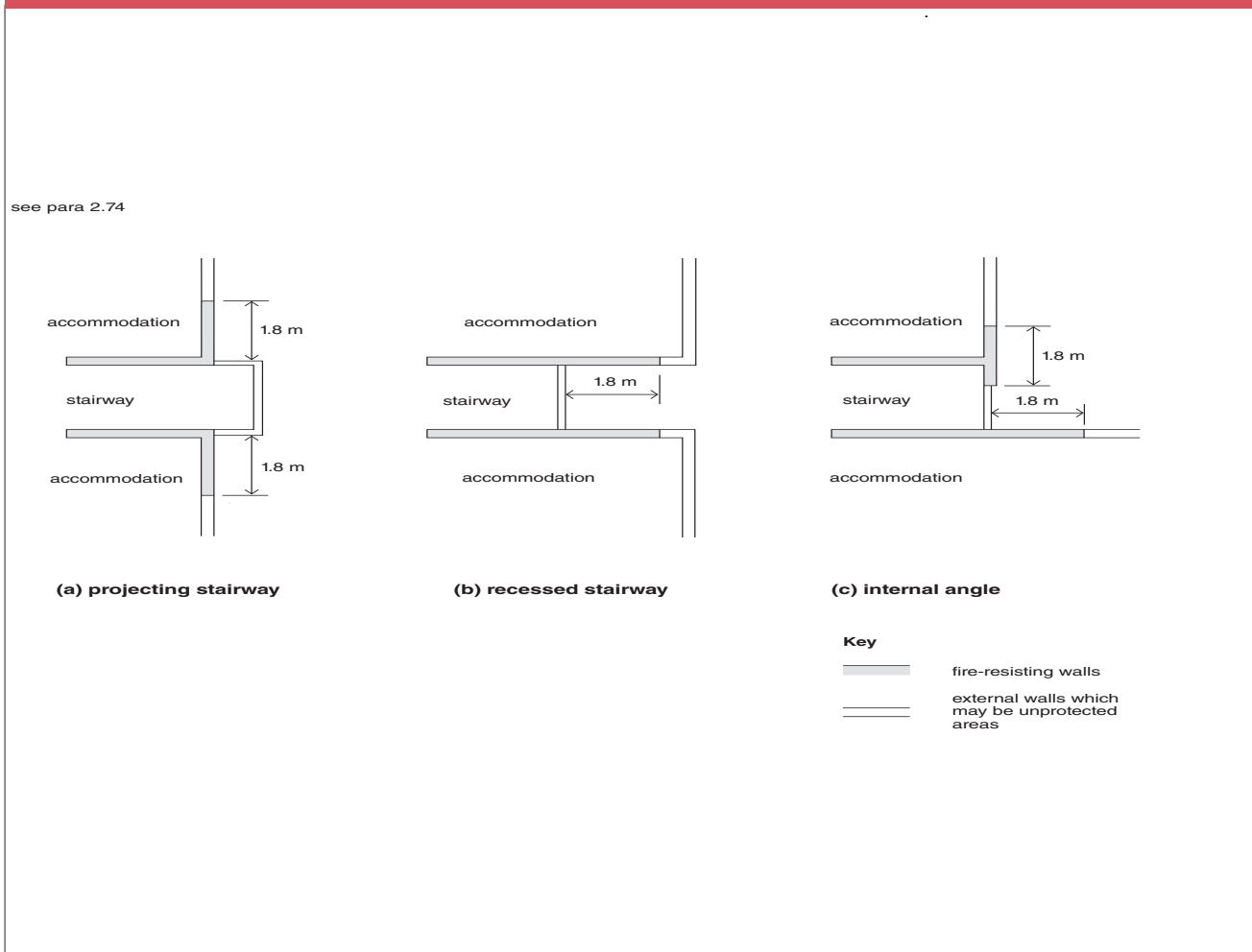
## External walls adjacent to protected stairways

- 2.74 Where a protected stairway projects beyond, is recessed from, or is in an internal angle of the external walls of the building – the distance between any unprotected areas (see Section 5) in the adjacent external walls of the building and an unprotected area in the external walls of the protected stairway should not be less than 1.8 m, as shown in Diagram 2.10.

## External escape stairs

- 2.75 Where more than one escape route is available from a storey (or part of a building), one or more than one, of those routes may be by way of an external escape stair provided that –
- (a) there is at least one internal escape stairway from every part of each storey; and
  - (b) in the case of –
    - (i) a building of Purpose Group 5 – the route is not intended for use by members of the public; or
    - (ii) a building of Purpose Group 2 – the route serves only staff accommodation (office or residential).

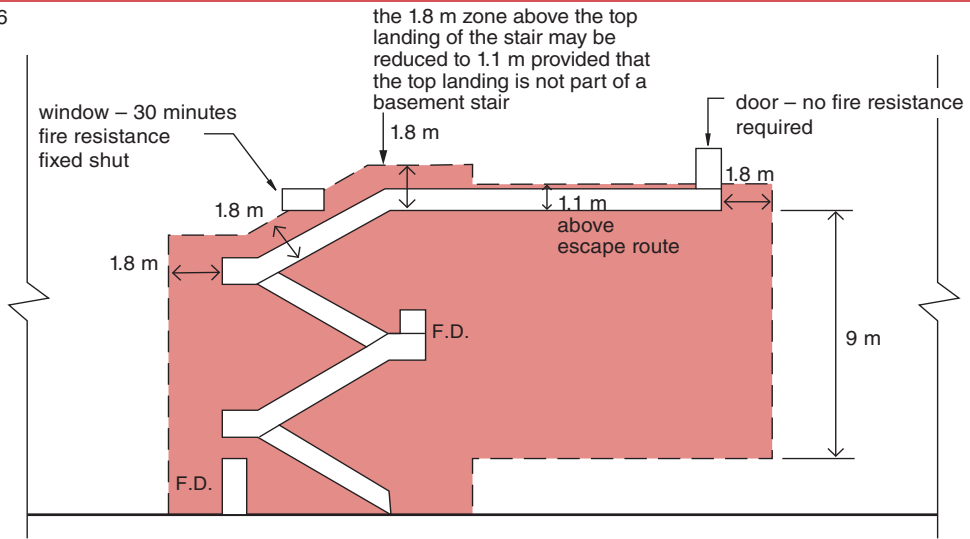
**Diagram 2.10 External walls adjacent to protected stairways**



- 
- 2.76 Where an external stair is part of an escape route –
- (a) the stair should be protected from the weather when it serves a floor or flat roof more than 6 m above ground level. The degree of protection from the weather will depend on the exposure of the stair;
  - (b) all doors giving access to the stair should be fire-resisting except at the top of any stair which leads downwards;
  - (c) any part of the external walls within 1.8 m of the stair (measured horizontally) should be of fire-resisting construction –
    - (i) 1.8 m above (this may be reduced to 1.1 m at the top landing of the stair provided that it is not the top landing of a basement stair);
    - (ii) 1.8 m at the side of; and
    - (iii) 9 m below,the flights and landings of the stair as shown on Diagram 2.11;
  - (d) the external walls of the building within 1.8 m of the escape route from the bottom of the stair should be fire-resisting to a height of 1.1 m above the escape route; and
  - (e) glazing in fire-resisting external walls described in (c) and (d) above should also be fire-resisting and fixed shut (see Table 2.8 for the limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing).

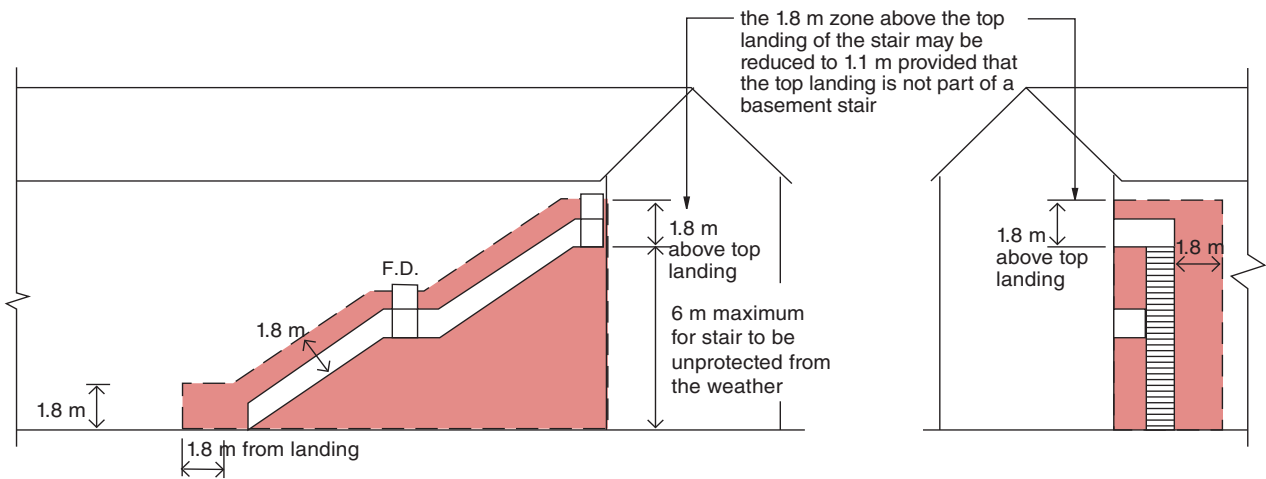
## Diagram 2.11 Fire resistance of external walls adjacent to external escape routes

see para 2.58 and 2.76



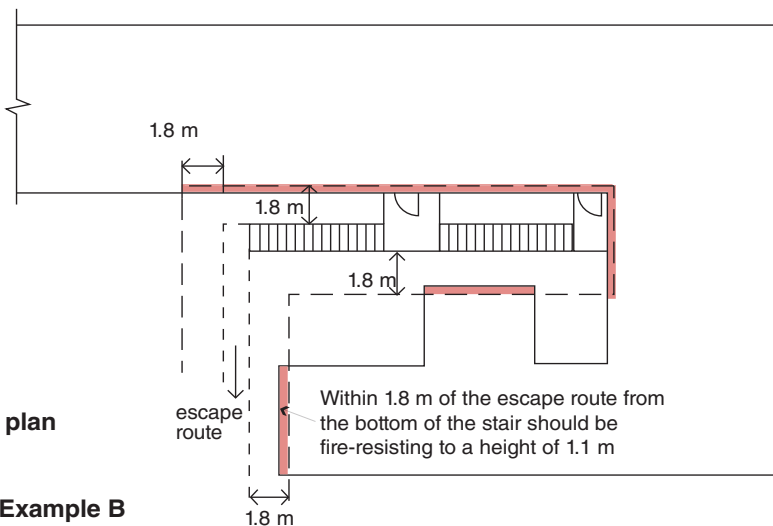
elevation a

### Example A



elevation b1

elevation b2



plan

### Example B

#### Key

- F.D. fire-resisting door
- fire-resisting area of wall



**Table 2.8 Limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing in enclosures and fire doors on escape routes**

Position of glazed element	Permitted extent of glazing in parts of a building with access to –				
	A single stair		More than one stair		
	Walls	Door leaf	Walls	Door leaf	
<b>A Purpose Group 1(b) and (c)</b>					
1	Within the enclosures of a protected stairway or within fire-resisting separation shown in Diagram 2.3	Fixed fanlights only	Unlimited	Fixed fanlights only	Unlimited
2	Within the enclosures of an existing stair	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
3	Within fire-resisting separation described in paragraph 2.12(a)	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m
4	Between an attached/integral garage and a dwellinghouse	Not applicable	Nil	Not applicable	Nil
<b>B All other purpose groups</b>					
5	Between residential/sleeping accommodation and a common escape route (corridor, lobby or stair)	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
6	Between a protected stairway <sup>(1)</sup> and –  (i) the accommodation; or  (ii) a corridor which is not a protected corridor.  Other than in item 5 above	Nil	25% of door area	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	50% of door area
7	Between –  (i) a protected stairway and a protected lobby or protected corridor; or  (ii) accommodation and a protected lobby.  Other than in item 5 above	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m
8	Between the accommodation and a protected corridor forming a dead end. Other than in item 5 above	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Not applicable	Not applicable
9	Between accommodation and any other corridor; or subdividing corridors. Other than in item 5 above.	Not applicable	Not applicable	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m <sup>(2)</sup> unlimited above 0.1 m

**Table 2.8 Limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing in enclosures and fire doors on escape routes (cont'd)**

Position of glazed element	Permitted extent of glazing in parts of a building with access to –			
	A single stair		More than one stair	
	Walls	Door leaf	Walls	Door leaf
<b>B All other purpose groups</b>				
10 Adjacent an external escape route described in paragraph 2.58	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route
11 Adjacent an external escape stair described in paragraph 2.76	Not applicable	Not applicable	Unlimited	Unlimited

Notes:

All heights should be measured vertically from the floor, the landing level, the stair pitch line or the external escape route.

(1) If the protected stairway is also a protected shaft (see Section 4) or a firefighting stairway (see Section 6) there may be further restrictions on the uses of glazed elements.

(2) The 0.1 m limit is intended to limit the probability of fire spread from a floor covering.

### Provision of refuges

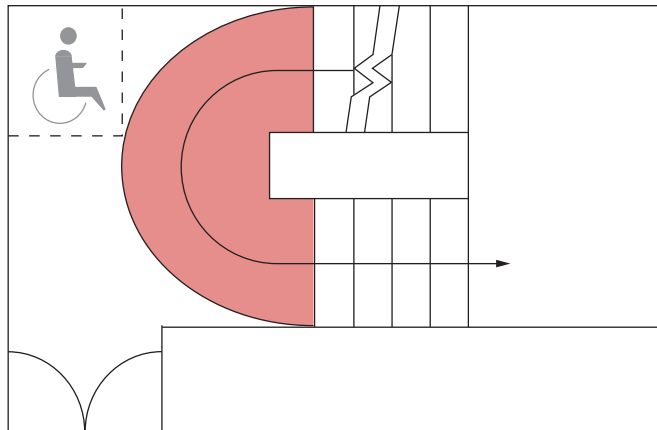
2.77 Refuges are relatively safe areas for disabled people to wait for short periods before completing their evacuation. They are not areas where disabled people should be left to wait for rescue by the Fire and Rescue Service, or to wait until the fire is extinguished.

A refuge should be provided for each protected stairway affording egress from each storey, except storeys consisting exclusively of plant rooms. A refuge should also be provided at each final exit that leads onto an external flight of steps (in this case the refuge may be external). However, refuges are not required in a small building in single occupancy which comprises not more than a basement, a ground floor and a first storey with the floor area of each storey not more than 280 m<sup>2</sup>.

Note – Whilst a refuge should be provided for each stairway, they need not necessarily be located within the stair enclosure but should enable direct access to the stair. The number of refuge spaces need not necessarily equal the sum of the number of wheelchair users who can be present in the building. The use of refuges forms part of the management plan and it may be that more than one disabled person will use a single refuge as they pass through as part of the evacuation procedure.

## Diagram 2.12 Refuge in a stair

see para. 2.78



**Provision where access to the wheelchair space is counter to the access flow within the stairway**



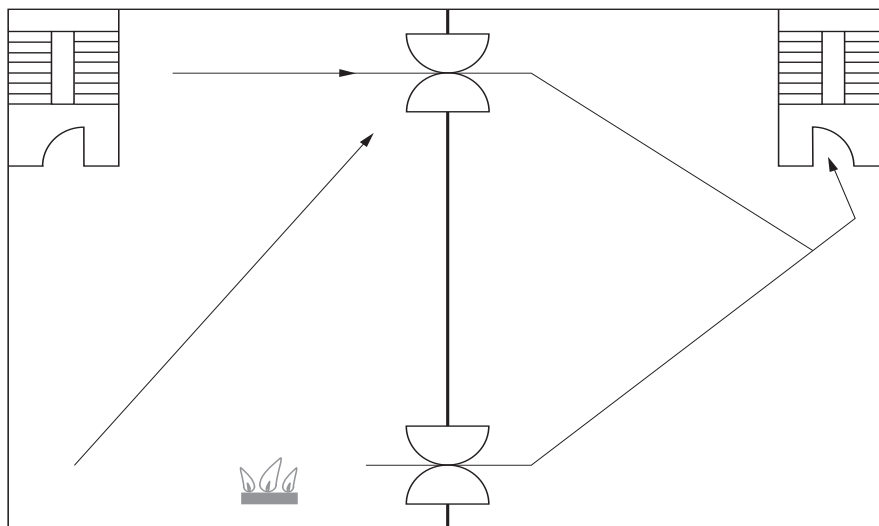
Wheelchair space



Occupied by escape flow

## Diagram 2.13 Refuge formed by compartmentation

see para 2.78



**Storey divided into two refuges by compartment wall (stairways not provided with wheelchair space).**

Note:

Persons occupying the left-hand compartment would not reach a refuge until they had entered the right-hand compartment. Two doorsets in the partition are necessary in case access to one of the doorsets is blocked by fire.

- 
- 2.78 The following are examples of satisfactory refuges –
- (a) an enclosure such as a protected stairway (see diagram 2.12) or protected lobby, protected corridor or compartment (see diagram 2.13); and
  - (b) an area in the open air such as a flat roof, balcony, podium or similar place which is sufficiently protected (or remote) from any fire risk and provided with its own means of escape.

Where a refuge is within a pressurised stair the smoke control system should be in accordance with BS EN 12101-6.

- 2.79 Each refuge should provide an area accessible to a wheelchair of at least 900 mm x 1400 mm in which a wheelchair user can await assistance. Where a refuge is in a protected stairway or protected lobby or protected corridor the wheelchair space should not reduce the width of the escape route. Where the wheelchair space is within a protected stairway, access to the wheelchair space should not obstruct the flow of persons escaping.
- 2.80 Refuges and evacuation lifts should be clearly identified by appropriate signs. Where a refuge is in a lobby or stairway the sign should be accompanied by a blue mandatory sign worded “Refuge - keep clear”.
- 2.81 To facilitate the effective evacuation of people temporarily waiting in each refuge an emergency voice communication system should be provided. It is essential that the occupants of each refuge are able to alert other people that they are in need of assistance and for them to be reassured that their presence in the refuge is known and that assistance will be forthcoming.

The emergency voice communication system should either -

- a) comply with BS 5939-9 and consist of a Type B outstation at each refuge which communicates with a master station located in the building control room (where provided) or adjacent to the fire alarm panel; or
- b) in some buildings, it may be more appropriate to use an alternative approach such as the use of wireless technology. Such technology needs to be readily operated by, and comprehensible to disabled people.

### **Evacuation lifts**

- 2.82 In general, it is not appropriate to use a lift when there is a fire in the building. However, in some circumstances a suitably sited and protected lift containing certain safety features may be used for evacuating people. Guidance on the design, location and use of an evacuation lift is given in BS 5588-8. The evacuation lift installation should conform with BS EN 81-1 or BS EN 81-2 as appropriate for the particular type of lift.
- 2.83 For general provisions relating to the fire protection of lift installations, see paragraphs 2.99 and 2.100.

---

## General provisions

- 2.84 The provisions in paragraphs 2.85 to 2.103 relate to the construction and protection of escape routes, some service installations and other matters associated with the design of escape routes.

### Fire resistance

- 2.85 Details of fire resistance test criteria and standards of performance are given in Section 4.

All walls, partitions and other enclosures (including roofs that form part of an escape route) required to have fire resistance to meet the provisions of this Section should have the appropriate performance given in Tables 4.1 and 4.2. Where glazed elements in such enclosures are only able to satisfy the relevant performance in respect of integrity (i.e. uninsulated glazing), their use should be limited in accordance with Table 2.8.

All doors required to have fire resistance to meet the provisions of this Section should have the appropriate performance given in Table 4.5, should be self-closing and the extent of any uninsulated glazing should be in accordance with Table 2.8.

### Seating and gangways

- 2.86 Permanent or retractable seating for closely seated audiences or spectators should be designed in accordance with Clauses 8.1 to 8.4 of BS 5588-6.

### Doors on escape routes

- 2.87 In general doors on escape routes, whether fire doors or not, should only be fitted with locks or fastenings which are readily operated from the side approached by a person making an escape. The operation of such a lock or fastening should not involve the use of a key or the manipulation of more than one mechanism.

However, a door to a room may be locked when the room is not occupied provided that –

- (a) it is not an access room to an inner room; or
- (b) it is not part of an escape route for people in other parts of the building.

Where a door on an escape route has to be secured against entry when the building or part of the building is occupied, it should only be fitted with a lock or fastening which is readily operated, without a key, from the side approached by people making their escape. Similarly, where a secure door is operated by a code, combination, swipe or proximity card, biometric data or similar means, it should also be capable of being overridden from the side approached by people making their escape. Electrically powered locks should return to the unlocked position –

- (i) on operation of the fire alarm system;
- (ii) on loss of power or system failure; and

- 
- (iii) on activation of a manual door release unit (Type A) to BS EN 54-11 positioned at the door on the side approached by people making their escape. Where the door provides escape in either direction, a unit should be installed on both sides of the door.

- 2.88 In the case of places of assembly, shop and commercial buildings, doors on escape routes from rooms with an occupant capacity of more than 60 should either not be fitted with lock, latch or bolt fastenings, or be fitted with panic fastenings in accordance with BS EN 1125.

### **Direction of opening of doors**

- 2.89 Doors on escape routes should, as far as practicable, open in the direction of escape. Doors should always open in the direction of escape in the following situations –
- (a) from a place of special fire hazard;
  - (b) in the case of a building of Purpose Group 6 or 7 – where the number of occupants is more than 10; and
  - (c) in the case of a building of any other purpose group – where the number of people likely to use the door in the event of a fire is more than 60.

Doors on escape routes should open through not less than 90° and swing clear of any change in floor level, other than a threshold or single step (with a rise of not more than 170 mm) on the line of the doorway. At no point of its swing should a door reduce the effective width of any escape route across a landing.

A door that opens towards a corridor should be recessed to prevent its swing from encroaching on the effective width of the corridor.

- 2.90 Revolving doors, automatic doors and turnstiles should not be permitted across escape routes unless –
- (a) they have non-automatic swing doors of the required width immediately adjacent;
  - (b) they are of the required width and easily openable in an emergency; or
  - (c) where the doors are automatic –
    - (i) they are of the required width and fail safe to the open position; or
    - (ii) they are of the required width and are provided with a monitored failsafe system for opening the doors if the main electricity supply fails.

## Vision panels in doors

- 2.91 A glazed vision panel, or panels of not less than 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>, should be provided in a door that subdivides a corridor, or where a door swings both ways.

The vision panel or panels should include –

- (a) a lower zone of visibility not more than 500 mm to not less than 800 mm; and
- (b) an upper zone of visibility not more than 1150 mm to not less than 1500 mm,

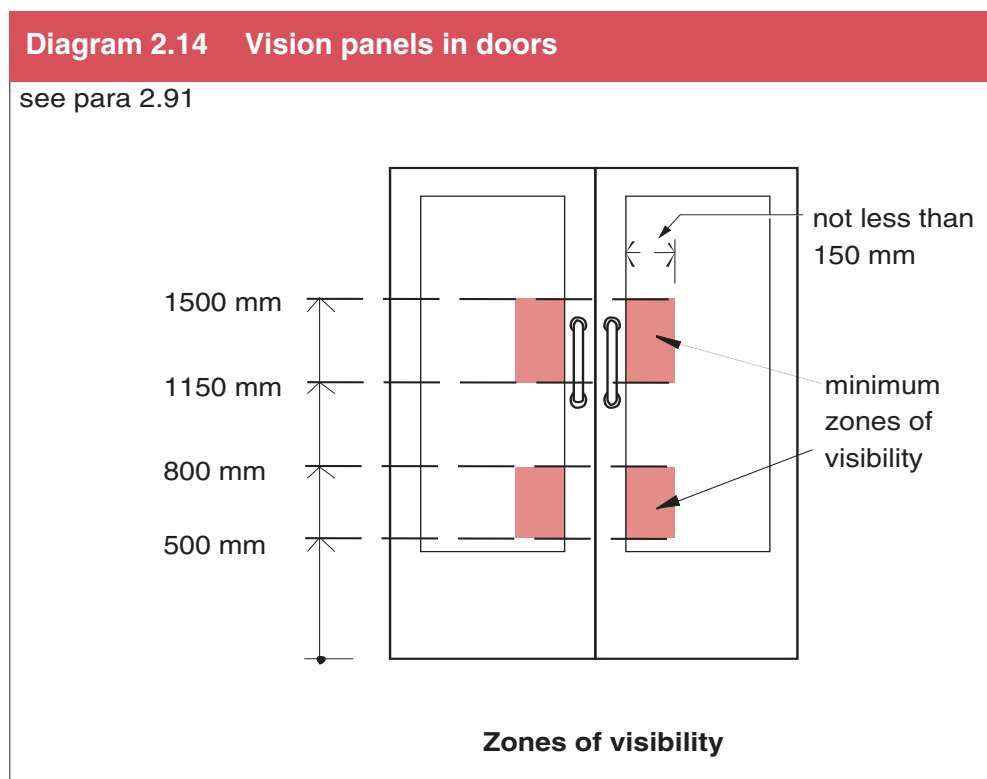
measured from the floor and located towards the leading edge of the door. See Diagram 2.14.

## Height and width of escape routes

- 2.92 All escape routes should have a clear headroom of not less than 2 m and there should be no projections below this height, except for door frames.

The width of an escape route should be measured at 1.5 m above floor level or pitch line. The projection of handrails, if less than 100 mm, and stringers, skirtings and architraves if less than 30 mm, on either or both sides should be ignored.

The width of an escape doorway from a room should be taken as the clear width when the door is open (see Diagram B.6).



---

## Construction of escape stairs

- 2.93 Other than in a dwellinghouse every escape stair and its associated landings should be constructed of materials of limited combustibility where –
- (a) it is the only stair serving the building (or part of the building), unless the building is of two or three storeys and is of Purpose Group 1(a) or Purpose Group 3;
  - (b) it is within a basement storey, unless it is within a flat with more than one storey;
  - (c) the height to any storey which it serves is more than 18 m above ground or final exit level;
  - (d) it is a firefighting stairway (see Section 6); or
  - (e) it is external, except in the case of a stair that connects the final exit level with a floor or flat roof less than 6 m above or below final exit level.

Combustible materials may be added to the upper surface of these stairs except in the case of firefighting stairways.

## Helical stairs and spiral stairs

- 2.94 Helical stairs or spiral stairs may form part of an escape route (other than for the evacuation of disabled people or for the evacuation of pupils in schools) provided that they are designed in accordance with BS 5395: Part 2. Helical stairs and spiral stairs should be of Type E (public stair) where they are intended to be used by the public.

## Final exits

- 2.95 A final exit should –
- (a) have a width not less than the width of the escape route it serves, the width of a final exit doorway should be measured in accordance with B.1(g) of Appendix B;
  - (b) be sited to ensure rapid dispersal to a place of safety;
  - (c) be readily apparent to people who need to use it; and
  - (d) be sited clear of any fire hazards including fire or smoke issuing from a basement, and from openings to transformer rooms, solid waste stores, boiler rooms and similar hazards.



## Lighting of escape routes

2.96 Other than in a dwellinghouse all escape routes should have adequate artificial lighting.

The areas listed in Table 2.9 should also have escape lighting, which will illuminate the escape route if the mains supply fails. Standards for the installation of escape lighting are given in BS 5266-1.

Escape lighting to escape stairways should be on a separate circuit to that supplying any other part of the escape route or building.

**Table 2.9 Provisions for escape lighting**

Purpose group of the building or part of the building	Areas requiring escape lighting
Purpose Group 2	All common escape routes <sup>(1)</sup>
Purpose Groups 3, 4 <sup>(2)</sup> , 6 and 7(a)	(a) Underground or windowless accommodation (b) Stairways in a central core or serving storey(s) more than 18 m above ground level (c) Internal corridors more than 30 m long (d) Open-plan areas more than 60 m <sup>2</sup>
Purpose Groups 4 <sup>(3)</sup> and 7(b)	All escape routes <sup>(1)</sup> (except in a shop of not more than three storeys, with no sales floor greater than 280 m <sup>2</sup> , provided that the shop is not a restaurant or bar)
Purpose Group 5	All escape routes <sup>(1)</sup> and accommodation except for— (a) accommodation open on one side to view sport or entertainment during daylight hours; and (b) parts of school buildings with natural light and used only during normal school hours
All purpose groups	(a) All toilet accommodation having a floor area more than 8 m <sup>2</sup> (b) Windowless toilet accommodation having a floor area not more than 8 m <sup>2</sup> (c) Electricity generator rooms (d) Switch room/battery room for emergency lighting system (e) Emergency control room

**Notes:**

(1) Including external escape routes.

(2) Those areas of the building to which the public are not admitted.

(3) Those areas of the building to which the public are admitted.

---

## Protected power circuits

- 2.97 Where it is critical for electrical circuits to be able to continue to function during a fire, protected circuits are needed. The potential for damage to cables forming protected circuits should be limited by the use of sufficiently robust cables, careful selection of cable routes and/or by the provision of physical protection in areas where cables may be susceptible to damage. Methods of cable support should generally be non-combustible and such that circuit integrity will not be reduced below that afforded by the cable.

A protected circuit for operation of equipment in the event of a fire should consist of cables meeting at least the requirements for PH 30 classification when tested in accordance with BS EN 50200 (incorporating Appendix E), or equivalent standard. It should follow a route selected to pass only through parts of the building in which the fire risk is negligible and should be separate from any circuit provided for another purpose.

In large or complex buildings there may be fire protection systems that need to operate for an extended period during a fire. Further guidance on the selection of cables for such systems is given in BS 5839-1, BS 5266-1 and BS 7346-6.

## Exit signs

- 2.98 Other than in a dwellinghouse, exits on escape routes except those in normal use for egress, should be marked with signs which are readily visible so that the occupants of a building can clearly and readily see where the exits are.

The signs should comply with the relevant requirements of BS 5499-1 and BS 5499-4. (Advice on fire safety signs, including emergency escape signs, is given in HSE publication: *Safety signs and signals: guidance on regulations.*)

---

## Fire protection of lift installations

2.99 As lifts penetrate floors and are usually sited within or adjacent to circulation routes they may prejudice the means of escape from the building. To safeguard against this a lift and its associated machine room should comply with the following provisions.

A lift should be –

- (a) in a protected shaft where it penetrates a compartment floor (see paragraph 4.25);
- (b) within the enclosure of a protected stairway where permitted by paragraph 2.72; or
- (c) enclosed with fire-resisting construction where its siting prejudices the means of escape.

A lift should not be continued down to serve a basement storey in a building (or part of a building) the upper storeys of which are served by a single escape stairway or if the lift is within the enclosure to an escape stairway which is terminated at ground level.

A lift in a basement or enclosed car park should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor unless it is in a protected stairway enclosure.

A lift should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor on a storey which contains a high fire risk area, if the lift also delivers directly into a corridor serving sleeping accommodation.

Lift machine rooms should be sited over the lift shaft where practicable. Where the lift is within a protected stairway which is the only protected stairway in a building (or part of a building) the machine room should be located outside the protected stairway, if it cannot be sited over the lift shaft.

In a building designed for phased evacuation, where the lift is not within a protected stairway, the lift entrance should be separated from the floor area on every storey by a protected lobby [see paragraph 2.66(b)].

2.100 A feature lift such as a wall-climber lift which rises within a large volume such as a mall or atrium and is not in a conventional well, may be at risk if it runs through a smoke reservoir. In which case care is needed to maintain the integrity of the smoke reservoir and to protect the occupants of the lift.

## Mechanical ventilation systems

2.101 A mechanical ventilation system should be designed so that in a fire either –

- (a) the air movement in the building is directed away from escape routes; or
- (b) the system is closed down.

Where the system re-circulates air it should comply with the provisions of BS 5588-9 in respect of its operation under fire conditions.

---

Where a pressurization system is installed in a protected stairway all mechanical ventilation and air conditioning systems in the building should be compatible with it when operating under fire conditions.

### **Waste chutes and storage**

- 2.102 A room used for the storage of waste or containing a waste chute should be –
- (a) separated from other parts of the building by fire-resisting construction;
  - (b) located outside protected stairways and protected lobbies; and
  - (c) accessed from the open air or from a protected lobby which has not less than 0.2 m<sup>2</sup> of permanent ventilation.

### **Shop store rooms**

- 2.103 Where the siting of a fully enclosed walk-in store room within a shop prejudices a means of escape it should be separated from the retail areas by fire-resisting construction other than where –
- (a) it is provided with an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector or detectors located in the store room; or
  - (b) it is fitted with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845.

See Table 4.1, Item 14 (c).

## Section 3 Internal fire spread - Linings

- 3.1 This Section contains provisions to restrict the spread of flame over the internal wall and ceiling linings and, in some locations, to limit the contribution they will make to the growth of the fire. This Section should be read in conjunction with paragraphs 1.7 to 1.11.

The choice of materials for wall and ceiling linings can significantly affect the spread of a fire and its rate of growth, even though such linings are not likely to be the materials first ignited. This choice is particularly important in circulation spaces where linings may offer the main means by which fire spreads, and where rapid spread is most likely to prevent occupants from escaping.

Several properties of lining materials influence fire spread. These include the ease of ignition and the rate at which the lining material gives off heat when burning. The guidance relating to the European fire tests and classification provides for control of internal fire spread through control of these properties. This booklet does not give detailed guidance on other properties such as the generation of smoke and fumes.

- 3.2 Provisions regarding linings within concealed spaces, above fire-protecting suspended ceilings and enclosures to sanitary pipework are contained in Section 4. Additional provisions regarding the internal surface of rooflights are contained in Section 5.
- 3.3 This Section does not contain provisions regarding the upper surface of floors and stairs because they are not significantly involved in a fire until it is well developed. Consequently, they are not likely to contribute to the early stages of fire spread that have most impact on the safety of occupants.

Furniture and fittings can have a major effect on fire spread but it is not possible to control them under the Building Regulations. Consequently, they are not covered by this booklet.

### **Classification of performance of materials or products (National classification)**

- 3.4 The surface spread of flame classification of a lining should be ascertained by testing in accordance with BS 476: Part 7. The classifications given in such tests are Classes 1, 2, 3 and 4. Class 0 is achieved where a lining material or the surface of a composite product is either –

- (a) composed throughout of materials of limited combustibility; or
- (b) a Class 1 material which has when tested to BS 476: Part 6, a fire propagation index (I) of not more than 12 and a sub-index ( $i_1$ ) of not more than 6.

A composite material of limited combustibility which does not have a surface complying with (a) or (b) should be classified by test.

Class 0 is the highest classification and Class 4 materials are not acceptable.

- 
- 3.5 The term thermoplastic material includes all synthetic polymeric materials which have a softening point lower than 200°C when tested to BS EN ISO 306: Method A120 Plastics. For the purposes of this Section (and Section 4) thermoplastic materials are classified as TP(a) rigid and TP(a) flexible and TP(b) as follows –
- (a) To be classified as TP(a) rigid, a thermoplastic material should be –
    - (i) rigid solid PVC sheet;
    - (ii) solid polycarbonate sheet not less than 3 mm thick;
    - (iii) double or multiple skin rigid sheet of unplasticised PVC or polycarbonate which achieves a classification of Class 1; or
    - (iv) a rigid product, a specimen of which (at the thickness of the product as put on the market) when tested to BS 2782-0: Method 508A, extinguishes before the flame reaches the first mark and after removal of the burner, the flaming or afterglow does not exceed 5 seconds.
  - (b) To be classified as TP(a) flexible, a thermoplastic material should be a flexible product not greater than 1 mm thick which complies with the Type C requirements of BS 5867: Part 2 when tested to BS 5438 Test 2 (excluding the cleansing procedure) with the flame applied to the surface of the specimens for 5, 15, 20 and 30 seconds respectively.
  - (c) To be classified as TP(b) a thermoplastic material should be –
    - (i) rigid solid polycarbonate sheet less than 3 mm thick;
    - (ii) double or multiple skin polycarbonate sheet which does not achieve a classification of Class 1; or
    - (iii) a product which, when a specimen of material between 1.5 mm and 3 mm thick, tested to BS 2782-0: Method 508A, has a rate of burning not greater than 50 mm per minute.

Note – Currently, no new guidance is possible on the assessment or classification of thermoplastic materials under the European system since there is no generally accepted European test procedure and supporting comparative data.

- 3.6 Where a thermoplastic material is used as a lining to protect a wall or ceiling but is not fully bonded to a non-thermoplastic substrate the surfaces of both the thermoplastic material and the substrate should meet the provisions of paragraph 3.10. However, where a thermoplastic material is fully bonded to a non-thermoplastic substrate only the surface of the composite need meet the provisions of paragraph 3.10.

---

## Classification of performance of materials or products (European classification)

- 3.7 Performance in terms of reaction to fire to be met by construction products is determined by Commission Decision 200/147/EC of 8th February 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the reaction to fire performance of construction products.

The fire classification of a lining product should be in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 Fire classification of construction products and building elements, Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests. The reaction to fire tests are –

- (a) BS EN ISO 1182 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test;
- (b) BS EN ISO 1716 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the heat of combustion;
- (c) BS EN 13823 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item;
- (d) BS EN ISO 11925-2 Reaction to fire tests – Ignitability of building products subjected to direct impingement of flame – Part 2: Single-flame source test; and
- (e) BS EN 13238 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Conditioning procedures and general rules for selection of substrates.

The classifications given in BS EN ISO 13501-1 are A1, A2, B, C, D, E and F. Class A1 is the highest classification and Class F is the lowest.

Classes A2, B, C and D obtain an additional classification of –

- (i) s1, s2 or s3 regarding smoke production; and
- (ii) d0, d1 or d2 regarding the production of flaming droplets and/or particles.

Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

- 3.8 National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

### Definition of wall and ceiling

- 3.9 For the purposes of the performance of wall and ceiling linings –
- (a) a wall should include –
    - (i) the surface of glazing (except glazing in a door); and
    - (ii) any part of a ceiling which slopes at an angle of more than 70° to the horizontal;

- 
- (b) a wall should not include –
    - (i) doors and door frames;
    - (ii) window frames and frames in which glazing is fitted;
    - (iii) architraves, cover moulds, picture rails, skirtings and similar narrow members; and
    - (iv) fire surrounds, mantleshelves and fitted furniture;
  - (c) a ceiling should include –
    - (i) the surface of glazing; and
    - (ii) any part of a wall which slopes at an angle of 70° or less to the horizontal; and
  - (d) a ceiling should not include –
    - (i) trap doors and their frames;
    - (ii) the frames of windows or rooflights and frames in which glazing is fitted; and
    - (iii) architraves, cover moulds, picture rails, exposed beams and similar narrow members.

### **Performance of wall and ceiling linings**

- 3.10 The surface lining of a wall and of a ceiling should have a classification not lower than the relevant Class given in Table 3.1, subject to the provisions of paragraphs 3.11 to 3.16.
- 3.11 In a room any part of the surface of a wall may be of a Class lower than that given in Table 3.1 [but not lower than Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class)] if the total area of those parts in any one room does not exceed either –
  - (a) half the floor area of the room; or
  - (b) (i) in the case of a building of Purpose Group 1 or 2 – 20 m<sup>2</sup>; or
  - (ii) in the case of a building of any other purpose group – 60 m<sup>2</sup>,whichever is the lesser.
- 3.12 A suspended ceiling which is to contribute to the fire resistance of a floor/ceiling assembly having a fire resistance of more than 60 minutes should, in addition to having the classification given in Table 3.1, be constructed of materials of limited combustibility (see Table 4.3).
- 3.13 The ceiling of a room may be constructed, either as a suspended or stretched skin membrane, from panels of a thermoplastic material of the TP(a) flexible classification provided that –
  - (a) each panel is supported on all its sides;
  - (b) each panel is not more than 5 m<sup>2</sup> in area; and
  - (c) it is not a fire-resisting ceiling.



**Table 3.1 Surface classifications for walls and ceilings**

Type of building	Room <sup>(1)</sup> or circulation space	Surface class for both walls and ceilings	
		National class <sup>(2)</sup>	European class <sup>(2)(3)</sup>
Purpose Groups 1 and 2	Rooms not exceeding 4 m <sup>2</sup>	3	D-s3,d2
	Domestic garages not exceeding 40 m <sup>2</sup>	3	D-s3,d2
	All other rooms (including garages exceeding 40 m <sup>2</sup> )	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces (within a dwelling)	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces (common areas)	0	B-s3,d2 or higher
All other purpose groups	Rooms not exceeding 30 m <sup>2</sup>	3	D-s3,d2
	All other rooms	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces	0	B-s3,d2 or higher

**Notes:**

(1) For the meaning of room see definition in paragraph 1.1.

(2) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class, unless they have been tested accordingly.

(3) Where a classification includes 's3,d2', this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and flaming droplets/particles.

## Rooflights

3.14 Other than in a protected stairway a rooflight may be of a classification lower than the relevant Class given in Table 3.1 provided that –

(a) where it is –

- (i) a plastic material which has a lower surface with a classification not lower than Class 3; or
- (ii) a thermoplastic material which has a lower surface with a classification not lower than Class 3 or is classified as a TP(a) rigid or TP(b) product,

the size of the rooflight does not exceed the relevant maximum area given in Table 3.2; and

(b) where there is more than one rooflight in the ceiling of a room or space –

- (i) the area of rooflights does not exceed the relevant maximum total area given in Table 3.2; and

- (ii) the disposition of the rooflights complies with the limitations given in Diagram 3.1.

The upper surface of a rooflight is subject to the provisions of Section 5.

### Windows and internal glazing

- 3.15 A window in the external wall of a circulation space and all internal glazed areas should be glazed with a material having a classification not lower than that given in Table 3.1.

A window in an external wall of a room may be glazed with a thermoplastic material classified as a TP(a) rigid product.

### Lighting diffusers

- 3.16 This paragraph applies to a lighting diffuser which forms part of a ceiling. It does not apply to the diffuser of a light fitting which is attached to the soffit of, or suspended beneath, a ceiling.

**Table 3.2 Limitations on Class 3 plastic rooflights and thermoplastic rooflights and lighting diffusers in suspended ceilings**

Minimum classification of lower surface	Use of space below rooflight or diffuser	Maximum area of each rooflight or diffuser panel <sup>(1)</sup> (m <sup>2</sup> )	Maximum total area of rooflights or diffuser panels as a percentage of floor area of the space in which the ceiling is located (%)	Minimum separation distance between rooflights or diffuser panels <sup>(1)</sup> (m)
TP(a)	Rooms or circulation spaces (except protected stairways)	No limit <sup>(2)</sup>	No limit	No limit
Class 3 <sup>(3)</sup> or TP(b)	Rooms	5	50 <sup>(4)(5)</sup>	3 <sup>(5)</sup>
	Circulation spaces (except protected stairways)	5	15 <sup>(4)</sup>	3

Notes :

- (1) Small rooflights or diffuser panels may be grouped together provided that the overall size of the group and the space between one group and any others comply with the limitations given in Diagram 3.1.
- (2) Lighting diffusers of a TP(a) flexible material are limited to panels of not more than 5 m<sup>2</sup> (see paragraph 3.13).
- (3) There are no limitations on Class 3 materials in certain small rooms (see Table 3.1).
- (4) It may not be possible to use the maximum total percentage because the minimum 3 m separation distance must be maintained (see Diagram 3.1).
- (5) Class 3 rooflights to rooms in non-residential purpose groups may be spaced 1.8 m apart provided that the rooflights are evenly distributed and do not exceed 20% of the area of the room.

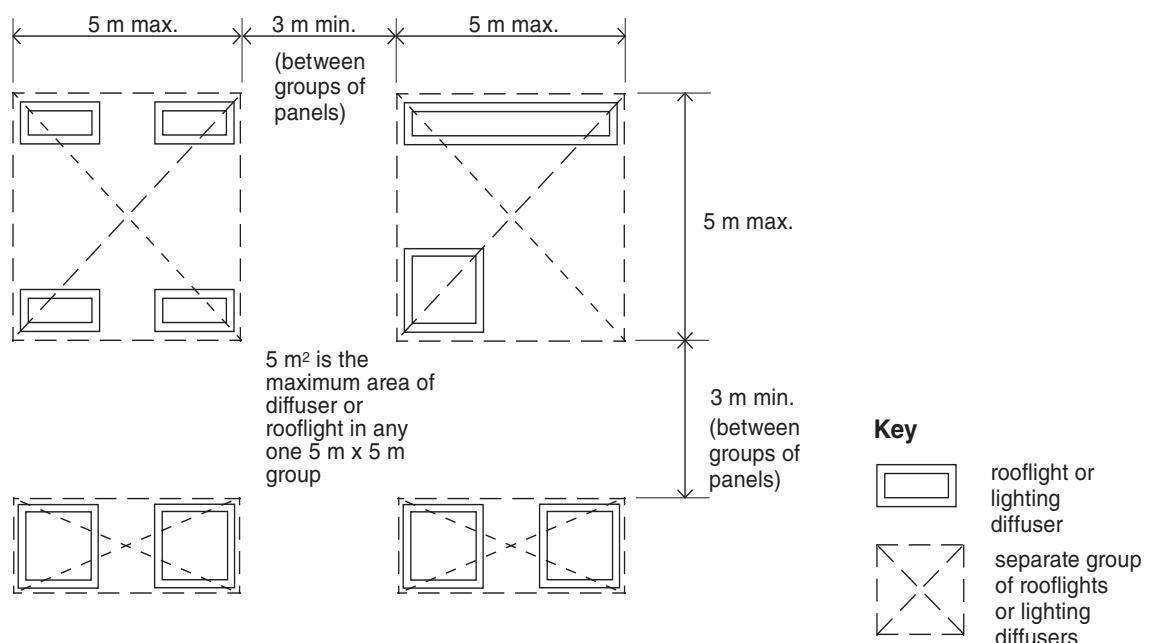
Lighting diffusers may be translucent or open-structured elements and may be part of a light fitting or be used below a rooflight or other source of light.

A thermoplastic lighting diffuser should not be incorporated in a fire-protecting or fire-resisting ceiling unless it has been satisfactorily tested as part of a luminaire within a ceiling assembly that provides the appropriate fire resistance. A ceiling in a room or in a circulation space (other than a protected stairway) may incorporate a thermoplastic lighting diffuser provided that –

- (a) the wall and ceiling surfaces exposed within the space above the ceiling (other than the upper surface of the lighting diffuser) comply with the classification given in Table 3.1 for the space below the ceiling; and
- (b) the lighting diffuser is either –
  - (i) classified as a TP(a) rigid product; or
  - (ii) classified as a TP(b) product and is loosely mounted so that it will fall out of its mounting on initial heating. Where more than one such lighting diffuser is fitted, they should be limited in their extent in accordance with Table 3.2. Small lighting diffusers may be grouped together (see Note (1) to Table 3.2 and Diagram 3.1).

**Diagram 3.1** Limitations on groups of Class 3 plastic rooflights and TP(b) thermoplastic rooflights and lighting diffusers in suspended ceilings

see para 3.14(b), 3.16(b) and Table 3.2 note (1) and (4)



- 4.1 The spread of fire within a building can be restricted by –
- (a) ensuring the elements of structure and certain other components of the building have a minimum standard of fire resistance;
  - (b) subdividing the building into compartments with fire-resisting construction;
  - (c) subdividing concealed and extensive cavities within the construction; and
  - (d) protecting openings in, and penetrations through, fire-resisting construction.

Where a building is divided into separated parts by a compartment wall (or walls), running the full height of the building in a continuous vertical plane, the provisions of this Section may be applied separately to each separated part.

### Tests for fire resistance

- 4.2 The fire resistance of an element of structure or other component of a building is a measure of its ability to withstand the effects of fire in one or more of the following ways –
- (a) resistance to collapse (loadbearing capacity) denoted 'R' in European classification;
  - (b) resistance to fire penetration (integrity) denoted 'E' in European classification; and
  - (c) resistance to transfer of excessive heat (insulation) denoted 'I' in European classification.

### National tests

- 4.3 Under National determination performance in respect of fire resistance should be determined in accordance with, in the case of –
- (a) loadbearing elements – BS 476: Parts 20 and 21;
  - (b) non-loadbearing elements – BS 476: Parts 20 and 22;
  - (c) suspended ceilings – BS 476: Parts 20 and 23;
  - (d) ventilation ducts – BS 476: Parts 20 and 24; and
  - (e) any element of construction tested prior to 1st January 1988 – BS 476: Part 8.

---

## European tests

- 4.4 Under European determination performance in respect of fire resistance should be classified in accordance with Commission Decision 2000/367/EC of 3rd May 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof. The fire resistance tests are –
- (a) BS EN 1363-1 Fire Resistance tests – Part 1: General requirements;
  - (b) BS EN 1363-2 Fire Resistance tests – Part 2: Alternative and additional procedures;
  - (c) BS EN 1364-1 Fire Resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements – Part 1: Walls;
  - (d) BS EN 1364-2 Fire Resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements – Part 2: Ceilings;
  - (e) BS EN 1365-1 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 1: Walls;
  - (f) BS EN 1365-2 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 2: Floors and roofs;
  - (g) BS EN 1365-3 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 3: Beams;
  - (h) BS EN 1365-4 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 4: Columns;
  - (i) BS EN 1366-1 Fire Resistance tests for service installations – Part 1: Ducts;
  - (j) BS EN 1366-2 Fire Resistance tests for service installations – Part 2: Fire dampers;
  - (k) BS EN 1634-1 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows;
  - (l) BS EN 1634-2 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware;
  - (m) BS EN 1634-3 Fire Resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies – Part 3: Smoke control doors and shutters; and
  - (n) BS EN 81-58 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts – Examination and tests – Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test.

See Appendix C for full details of all publications referred to.

## Specific provisions of test

- 4.5 Provision for an element of structure or other component of the building to have a specific period of fire resistance means that it should have not less than that period, in respect of the relevant aspects of performance given in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building**

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) <sup>(11)</sup>			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) <sup>(10)(11)</sup>	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity <sup>(1)</sup>	Integrity	Insulation		
1 Structural frame, beam or column	See Table 4.2	Not applicable	Not applicable	R see Table 4.2	Exposed faces
2 Loadbearing wall (which is not also a wall described in any of the following items)	See Table 4.2	Not applicable	Not applicable	R see Table 4.2	Each side separately
3 Floors –					
(a) in upper storey of two storey dwellinghouse (but not over a garage)	30 <sup>(2)</sup>	15 <sup>(2)</sup>	15 <sup>(2)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(7)</sup>	From underside
(b) between a shop and flat above	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	REI 60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	
(c) any other floor	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
4 Roofs –					
(a) any part forming an escape route	30	30	30	REI 30	From underside
(b) any roof that performs the function of a floor	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
5 External walls –					
(a) any part less than 1 m from any point on the relevant boundary	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	Each side separately
(b) any part 1 m or more from the relevant boundary	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	15	REI see Table 4.2 <sup>(8)</sup>	From inside
(c) any part required to have fire resistance to protect an external escape route	30	30	No provision <sup>(3)</sup>	RE 30 <sup>(3)</sup>	From inside
6 Compartment wall separating occupancies	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	REI 60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	Each side separately

**Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)**

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) <sup>(11)</sup>			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) <sup>(10)(11)</sup>	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity <sup>(1)</sup>	Integrity	Insulation		
7 Compartment wall other than in item 6 above	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	Each side separately
8 Protected shafts, excluding any firefighting shafts –					
(a) any glazing described in paragraph 4.26	Not applicable	30	No provision <sup>(3)</sup>	E 30 <sup>(3)</sup>	Each side separately
(b) any other part between the shaft and a protected lobby or protected corridor described in paragraph 4.26	30	30	30	REI 30	
(c) any part not described in (a) or (b) above	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
9 Enclosure (which does not form part of a compartment wall or a protected shaft) to a –					
(a) protected stairway	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	Each side separately
(b) lift shaft	30	30	30	REI 30	
(c) service shaft	30	30	30	REI 30	

**Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)**

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) <sup>(11)</sup>			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) <sup>(10)(11)</sup>	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity <sup>(1)</sup>	Integrity	Insulation		
10 Firefighting shafts – (a) construction separating firefighting shafts from remainder of building  (b) construction with a firefighting shaft separating firefighting stairway, firefighting lift shaft and firefighting lobby	120	120	120	REI 120	From side remote from shaft
	60	60	60	REI 60	From shaft side
	60	60	60	REI 60	Each side separately
11 Enclosure (which is not a compartment wall or described in item 8) to a –  (a) protected lobby or refuge (b) protected corridor	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	Each side separately
	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	
12 Subdivision of a corridor	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	Each side separately
13 Wall separating an attached or integral garage from a dwellinghouse	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	From garage side
14 Fire-resisting construction –  (a) in dwellings not described elsewhere (b) enclosing places of special fire hazard (c) between retail areas in a shop and store rooms <sup>(5)</sup> (d) fire-resisting subdivision described in Note (4) to Table 4.6	30	30	30 <sup>(4)</sup>	REI 30 <sup>(4)</sup>	Each side separately
	30	30	30	REI 30	
	30	30	30	REI 30	
	30	30	30	REI 30	



**Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)**

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) <sup>(11)</sup>			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) <sup>(10)(11)</sup>	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity <sup>(1)</sup>	Integrity	Insulation		
15 Cavity barrier	Not applicable	30	15	EI 30 <sup>(9)</sup>	Each side separately
16 Ceiling shown in Diagram 4.6 or 4.7	Not applicable	30	30	EI 30	From underside
17 Fire-resisting duct referred to in paragraph 4.42(e)	Not applicable	30	No provision	E 30	From outside
18 Casing around a drainage system as shown in Diagram 4.11	Not applicable	30	No provision	E 30	From outside
19 Flue walls described in paragraph 4.45	Not applicable	See Table 4.2 <sup>(6)</sup>	See Table 4.2 <sup>(6)</sup>	EI see Table 4.2 <sup>(6)</sup>	From outside
20 Fire doors	See Table 4.5			See Table 4.5	

Notes:

- (1) Applies to loadbearing elements only.
- (2) This standard of fire resistance is referred to as modified 30 minutes.
- (3) Except for any limitations on glazed elements given in Table 2.8.
- (4) See Table 2.8 for permitted extent of uninsulated glazed elements.
- (5) Applies only to store rooms where their siting prejudices means of escape.
- (6) At least one half of the period of fire resistance required for the compartment wall or floor.
- (7) Floors under item 3a, may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve at least 30 minutes loadbearing capacity and at least 15 minutes integrity and insulation.
- (8) External walls under item 5b may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve the relevant provisions for loadbearing capacity and integrity given in Table 4.2 and at least 15 minutes insulation.
- (9) Cavity barriers under item 15 may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve at least 30 minutes integrity and at least 15 minutes insulation.
- (10) 'R' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of loadbearing capacity; 'E' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of integrity; and 'I' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of insulation.
- (11) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

---

## **Fire resistance of elements of structure and certain other components of the building**

- 4.6 An element of structure and those other components of the building given in Table 4.1 should have a minimum period of fire resistance of not less than that given in Tables 4.1 and 4.2 for the purpose group of the building.

Where one element of structure or other component supports, carries or gives stability to another, the fire resistance of the supporting element or component should be not less than the minimum period of fire resistance for the other element (whether that other element is loadbearing or not).

Where an element of structure or other component forms part of more than one building or compartment, the fire resistance of that element or component should be not less than the greater of the relevant provisions.

### **Fire protecting suspended ceilings**

- 4.7 A suspended ceiling will only be accepted as contributing to the fire resistance of a floor where that ceiling is of the appropriate type given in Table 4.3.

### **Fire-resisting construction**

- 4.8 Where an element of structure or other component of the building is required to have fire resistance it may be constructed in accordance with an appropriate specification in Part II of the Building Research Establishment Report – *Guidelines for the construction of fire-resisting structural elements* (BR 128: 1988).

### **Places of special fire hazard**

- 4.9 Every place of special fire hazard should be enclosed by fire-resisting construction [see Table 4.1, item 14(b)].

**Table 4.2 Minimum periods of fire resistance**

Purpose group of building	Minimum period (minutes) for elements of structure and other components of the building forming part of					
	Basement storey+ including floor over		Ground or upper storey			
	Depth (m) of basement		Height (m) of top floor above ground in building or separated part of building <sup>(1)</sup>			
	More than 10	Not more than 10	Not more than 5	More than 5 not more than 18	More than 18 not more than 30	More than 30
<b>1</b> Residential (dwellings) –						
<b>(a)</b> flats	90	60	30*	60 <sup>(2)**</sup>	90**	120**
<b>(b) and (c)</b> dwellinghouses	Not relevant	30*	30*	60 <sup>@</sup>	Not relevant	Not relevant
<b>2</b> Residential –						
<b>(a)</b> institutional	90	60	30*##	60	90	120#
<b>(b)</b> other residential	90	60	30*	60	90	120#
<b>3</b> Office –						
not sprinklered	90	60	30*	60	90	Not permitted
sprinklered <sup>(3)</sup>	60	60	30*	30*	60	120#
<b>4</b> Shop and commercial –						
not sprinklered	90	60	60	60	90	Not permitted
sprinklered <sup>(3)</sup>	60	60	30*	60	60	120#
<b>5</b> Assembly and recreation –						
not sprinklered	90	60	60	60	90	Not permitted
sprinklered <sup>(3)</sup>	60	60	30*	60	60	120#
<b>6</b> Industrial –						
not sprinklered	120	90	60	90	120	Not permitted
sprinklered <sup>(3)</sup>	90	60	30*	60	90	120#
<b>7</b> Storage and other non-residential –						
<b>(a)</b> any building or part not described elsewhere –						
not sprinklered	120	90	60	90	120	Not permitted
sprinklered <sup>(3)</sup>	90	60	30*	60	90	120#

**Table 4.2 Minimum periods of fire resistance (cont'd)**

Purpose group of building	Minimum period (minutes) for elements of structure and other components of the building forming part of					
	Basement storey <sup>+</sup> including floor over		Ground or upper storey			
	Depth (m) of basement		Height (m) of top floor above ground in building or separated part of building <sup>(1)</sup>			
	More than 10	Not more than 10	Not more than 5	More than 5 not more than 18	More than 18 not more than 30	More than 30
<b>7 (b)</b> car park for light vehicles –						
(i) open sided car park <sup>(4)</sup>	Not applicable	Not applicable	15* <sup>\$(5)</sup>	15* <sup>\$(5)</sup>	15* <sup>\$(5)</sup>	Not applicable
(ii) any other car park	90	60	30*	60	90	120 <sup>#</sup>

Notes:

- + The floor over a basement (or if there is more than one basement, the floor over the topmost basement) should meet the provisions for the ground and upper storeys if that period is higher.
- \* Increased to a minimum of 60 minutes for compartment walls separating buildings.
- \*\* Reduced to 30 minutes for any floor within a flat with more than one storey, but not if the floor contributes to the support of the building as a whole.
- @ Reduced to 30 minutes for a dwellinghouse having not more than three storeys and for the wall or floor separating a dwellinghouse from an attached or integral garage.
- ## Multi-storey hospitals designed in accordance with Northern Ireland Firecode documents should have a minimum of 60 minutes.
- \$ Increased to a minimum of 30 minutes for elements protecting the means of escape.
- # Reduced to 90 minutes for elements not forming part of the structural frame.
- (1) A single storey building or a single storey separated part of a building should be subject to the period given under the heading “Not more than 5” and where it has a basement storey or storeys they should be subject to the period appropriate to their depth.
- (2) Reduced to 30 minutes where an existing building of not more than three storeys is being converted.
- (3) “Sprinklered” means that the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant requirements of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 in respect of occupancy rating and additional requirements for life safety.
- (4) Car parks which comply with paragraphs 4.49 and 4.50.
- (5) For the purposes of this technical booklet the following types of steel elements are deemed to have satisfied the minimum period of fire resistance of 15 minutes when tested to the European test method –
  - (i) Beams supporting concrete floors, maximum  $A_m/V = 230 \text{ m}^{-1}$  operating under full design load.
  - (ii) Free standing columns, maximum  $A_m/V = 180 \text{ m}^{-1}$  operating under full design load.
  - (iii) Wind bracing and struts, maximum  $A_m/V = 210 \text{ m}^{-1}$  operating under full design load.
 The meaning of ‘ $A_m/V$ ’ is given in BS 5950-8 Structural use of steel work in building - Code of practice for fire resistant design and is in line with European terminology. (This section factor was previously known as  $H_p/A_s$ .)

**Table 4.3 Limitations of fire-protecting suspended ceilings**

Height of building separated part	or (m)	Type of floor	Fire resistance of floor required by Table 4.2 (minutes)	Type of suspended ceiling (see notes)
Less than 18		Not compartment	60 or less	W, X, Y or Z
		Compartment	Less than 60	
			60	X, Y or Z
18 or more		Any	60 or less	Y or Z
No limit		Any	More than 60	Z

Notes:

**Ceiling type Description**

- W Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 or Class 1 (National Class) or Class C-s3,d2 or higher (European Class).
- X Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 (National Class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European Class).
- Y Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 (National Class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European Class). Ceiling should not contain easily openable access panels.
- Z Ceiling should be of a material of limited combustibility and not contain easily openable access panels. Any insulation above the ceiling should be of a material of limited combustibility.

Any access panels provided in fire-protecting suspended ceilings of Type Y or Z should be secured in position by releasing devices or screw fixings, and they should be shown to have been tested in the ceiling assembly in which they are incorporated.

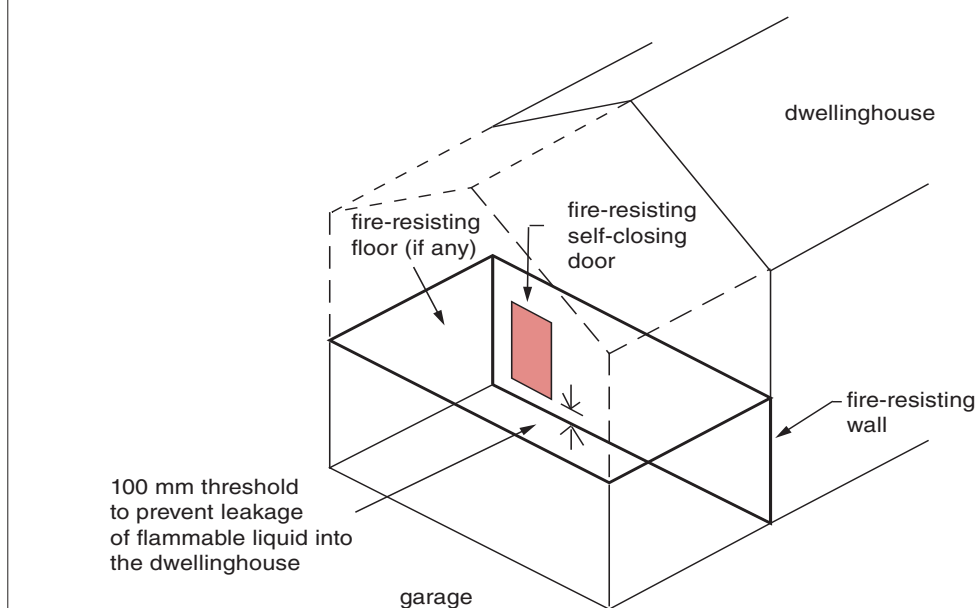
**European classifications.**

The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

**Diagram 4.1 Doorway between dwellinghouse and garage**

see para 4.10



---

## Dwellinghouses with attached garages

- 4.10 Where a dwellinghouse has an attached or integral garage it should be separated from the garage by fire-resisting construction with no openings other than for a fire-resisting self-closing door. In the case of a doorway between the dwellinghouse and the garage the doorway should have a threshold height of not less than 100 mm above the garage floor level to prevent the leakage of flammable liquid into the dwellinghouse (see Diagram 4.1).

## Variations of the provisions regarding fire resistance

- 4.11 A provision for an element of structure to have fire resistance should not apply to –
- (a) any part of the structure which only supports a roof unless –
    - (i) the roof performs the function of a floor, e.g. as a means of escape, for parking of vehicles, etc.;
    - (ii) the structure is part of, or is essential for the stability of an external wall which, under the provisions of Section 4, cannot be an unprotected area; or
    - (iii) the structure is part of or supports a compartment wall or a wall between a dwellinghouse and an attached or integral garage;
  - (b) in the case of a single storey building or a building which consists of a ground storey and one or more basement storeys – any element of structure which forms part of the ground storey unless the element –
    - (i) supports a gallery; or
    - (ii) is located as defined in sub-paragraph 4.11 (a)(ii) or 4.11 (a)(iii);
  - (c) the lowest floor of a building; and
  - (d) a platform floor.
- 4.12 Where one side of a basement storey or compartment is (due to the slope of the ground) open at and provides – means of escape and fire and rescue access at ground level and smoke venting, the period of resistance for the elements of structure and other components of the building in that basement storey or compartment should be that appropriate to a storey above the ground.
- 4.13 Where the roof space of an existing two storey dwellinghouse is to be converted to form a new storey the provisions of this Section are for the floors, both old and new, to have full 30 minutes fire resistance. However, the existing first floor construction need not be upgraded where it separates only rooms (and not circulation spaces) provided that –
- (a) only one storey is being added;
  - (b) the new storey contains not more than two habitable rooms;
  - (c) the total area of the new storey is not more than 50 m<sup>2</sup>;
  - (d) it has at least modified 30 minutes fire resistance; and
  - (e) the provisions of paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22 are met.

---

## Raised storage floors

- 4.14 Raised free-standing floors supported by racking are frequently erected for storage purposes and whether they are considered as a gallery or as a floor forming a storey the provisions for fire resistance for elements of structure apply.

In the case of automated storage systems where people do not normally frequent any of the raised storage tiers it is not necessary to provide the storage structure with fire resistance.

Where people frequent the storage tiers in the course of their normal use, the provisions for fire resistance for the raised storage floor and its supporting structure may be dispensed with where the number of persons likely to be on the raised floor at any one time is low (and does not include members of the public) and the raised floor –

- (a) is within a single storey building or compartment and is structurally free-standing;
- (b) consists of only one tier with the space both above and below used only for storage purposes;
- (c) is not more than 20 m in both width and length and does not exceed one half of the floor area of the space in which it is situated. However, these limits should not apply where the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 in respect of occupancy rating and additional requirements for life safety;
- (d) is served by a stair or stairs to comply with the relevant maximum travel distance given in Table 2.3 and at least one stair discharges within 4.5 m of an exit from the building or compartment;
- (e) has a surface classification on the underside not lower than Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class) (see paragraphs 3.4 and 3.7); and
- (f) is designed and constructed so that any persons on the floor will be readily aware of a fire starting on the lower level. Design and construction features include the use of perforations in the floor, leaving a space between the floor and the walls of the space housing it and automatic fire detection and alarm systems. However, where either the length or width of a raised storage floor is greater than 10 m an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector or detectors located to give warning of a fire below the floor should be provided.

---

## Compartmentation

- 4.15 The degree to which a building or separated part of a building is subdivided into compartments is related to the use of and the fire load in the building, the height to the top storey and the provision or otherwise of a sprinkler system. Compartmentation may assist in meeting the provisions of Section 2 or Section 5 of this Technical Booklet.

For compartmentation to be effective there should be continuity at the junctions of the fire-resisting elements enclosing the compartment and any opening from one compartment to another should not present a weakness. The spaces which connect compartments, e.g. stairs, service shafts, etc., should be enclosed to form protected shafts and their walls and floors should be constructed as compartment walls and compartment floors.

- 4.16 In the case of a two storey building of Purpose Group 4 or 6, where the use of the upper storey is ancillary to the main use of the ground storey, the ground storey may be treated as a single storey building for compartmentation purposes provided that –
- (a) the floor area of the upper storey is not more than –
    - (i) one fifth of the floor area of the ground storey; or
    - (ii) 500 m<sup>2</sup>,whichever is the lesser; and
  - (b) the upper storey is a separate compartment.

### Provision of compartment walls and compartment floors

- 4.17 In buildings of all purpose groups –
- (a) a compartment wall should be constructed where a wall –
    - (i) is common to two or more buildings; or
    - (ii) is provided to divide a building into separated parts; and
  - (b) a compartment wall or a compartment floor, as appropriate should be constructed to separate parts of a building which are in different purpose groups of Appendix A.
- 4.18 The following walls or floors should be constructed as compartment walls or compartment floors –
- (a) in a building of Purpose Group 1(b) or (c) –
    - (i) a wall which separates semi-detached dwellinghouses or dwellinghouses in a terrace (in these cases each dwellinghouse should be treated as a separate building); and
    - (ii) a wall or floor which separates a dwellinghouse from an attached or integral garage;
  - (b) in a building of Purpose Group 1(a) –
    - (i) every floor, other than a floor within a flat with more than one storey;
    - (ii) every wall which separates a flat from any other part of the building; and
    - (iii) every wall enclosing a communal waste container;



- 
- (c) in a building of Purpose Group 2 –
    - (i) every floor; and
    - (ii) in the case of a health care building – a wall needed to divide a storey into compartments for means of escape purposes;
  - (d) in a building of Purpose Group 4, 6 or 7 a wall or floor provided to divide the building into different occupancies (i.e. ownership, tenancies or similar); and
  - (e) in a building of Purpose Group 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7 –
    - (i) a wall which is needed to subdivide a building, or separated part of a building, so that the maximum floor area or maximum volume, as appropriate, of a compartment given in Table 4.4 is not exceeded;
    - (ii) every floor in a building or a separated part of a building (other than the lowest floor) where that building or separated part has a floor at a height of more than 30 m above ground level;
    - (iii) the floor of the ground storey where a building or separated part of a building has one or more basements (with the exception of a small building described in paragraph 2.68); and
    - (iv) every basement floor in a building, or a separated part of a building (other than the lowest basement floor), where that building or separated part has a floor at a depth of more than 10 m below ground level.

### **Construction of compartment walls and compartment floors**

4.19 Every compartment wall and compartment floor should –

- (a) form a complete barrier to fire between the compartments they separate; and
- (b) have the appropriate fire resistance required by paragraph 4.6.

A compartment wall may have timber beams, joists, purlins and rafters built into it provided that –

- (i) the wall is of masonry or concrete construction;
- (ii) any gaps between the wall and the timber are as small as practicable; and
- (iii) any gaps are fire-stopped in accordance with paragraphs 4.46 and 4.47.

A compartment wall between two or more buildings should extend the full height of the buildings in a continuous vertical plane. Thus adjoining buildings should be separated only by walls and not by floors.

A compartment wall used to form a separated part of a building should extend the full height of the building in a continuous vertical plane. Thus separated parts should be separated only by walls and not by floors.

**Table 4.4 Maximum floor areas and volumes of buildings or compartments**

Purpose group of building (or part)	Height of top storey of building above ground level (m)	Floor area of any one storey in the building or compartment (m <sup>2</sup> )		Maximum compartment volume (m <sup>3</sup> )	
		In a multi-storey building	In a single storey building	In a multi-storey building	In a single storey building
<b>3</b> Office	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit
<b>4</b> Shop and commercial –					
(i) shop – not sprinklered	No limit	2000	2000	No limit	No limit
sprinklered <sup>(1)</sup>	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
(ii) other than shop - not sprinklered	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
sprinklered	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
<b>5</b> Assembly and recreation –					
(i) school not sprinklered	No limit	800	800	No limit	No limit
sprinklered <sup>(1)</sup>	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
(ii) other than school - not sprinklered	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
sprinklered <sup>(1)</sup>	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
<b>6<sup>(3)</sup></b> Industrial –					
not sprinklered	Not more than 18 More than 18	7000 2000 <sup>(2)</sup>	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	No limit No limit
sprinklered <sup>(1)</sup>	Not more than 18 More than 18	14000 4000 <sup>(2)</sup>	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	No limit No limit
<b>7</b> Storage and other non-residential –					
<b>(a)<sup>(3)</sup></b> storage and any use not described elsewhere – not sprinklered	Not more than 18 More than 18	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	20000 4000 <sup>(2)</sup>	No limit No limit
sprinklered <sup>(1)</sup>	Not more than 18 More than 18	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	40000 8000 <sup>(2)</sup>	No limit No limit
<b>(b)</b> car park for light vehicles	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit

**Notes:**

(1) ‘Sprinklered’ means that the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system meeting the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845, i.e. the relevant occupancy rating together with the additional requirements for life safety.

(2) This reduced limit applies only to those storeys which are more than 18 m above ground level.

(3) There may be additional limitations on floor area, volume and/or sprinkler provisions in certain industrial and storage uses under other legislation.

---

## **Junctions of compartment walls and compartment floors with other walls**

- 4.20 Where a compartment wall or compartment floor meets a compartment wall or an external wall the junction should maintain the fire resistance for a period of not less than the period of fire resistance required by the compartment wall or compartment floor.

## **Junction of compartment walls and roofs**

- 4.21 If a fire penetrates a roof near a compartment wall there is a risk that it will spread over the roof to the adjoining compartment. Where a compartment wall meets a roof it should –
- (a) where the roof covering has a designation of AA, AB or AC (see paragraph 5.21), on a substrate or deck of a material of limited combustibility, for a width of not less than 1.5 m on either side of the junction – be taken up to meet the underside of the roof covering or deck and the junction fire-stopped [see Diagram 4.2(a)]. Where double skinned insulated roof sheeting is used it should incorporate a firebreak formed by a band of material of limited combustibility not less than 300 mm wide centred over the wall.  

Note – Thermoplastic rooflights which by virtue of paragraph 5.25 are regarded as having an AA (National class) designation or  $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  (European class) are not suitable for use in the zone described above.

However, where the building is of Purpose Group 1, 2(b), 3 or 5 and is not more than 15 m in height a combustible substrate of timber boarding, wood wool slabs or timber tiling battens may be carried over the compartment wall provided it is fully bedded in mortar, or no less suitable material, over the entire width of the wall [see Diagram 4.2(b)]; or
  - (b) be extended up through the roof to a height of not less than 375 mm above the top surface of the roof covering [see Diagram 4.2(c)].

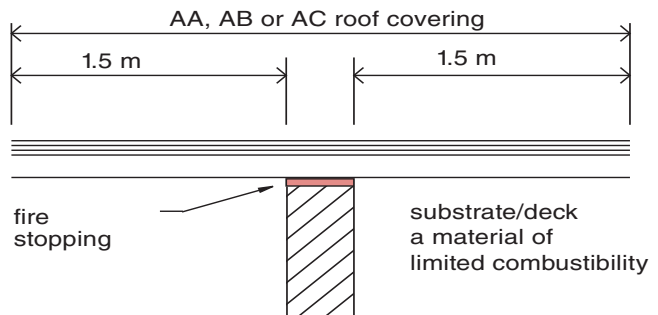
In paragraph (a) where roof support members pass through the wall they should be fire protected for a length of not less than 1.5 m on either side of the wall in order to avoid distortion at the junction.

## **Openings in compartment walls which separate buildings or occupancies**

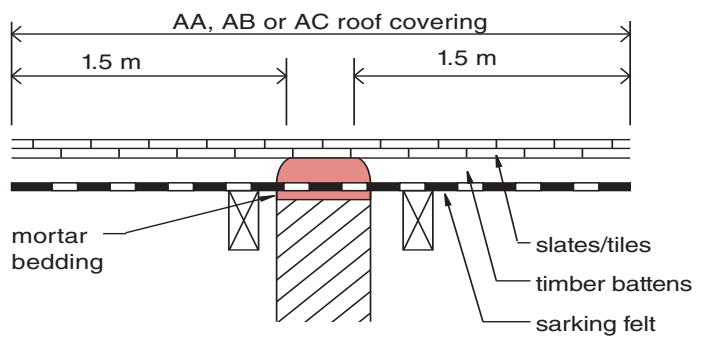
- 4.22 A compartment wall which is common to two or more buildings, or which separates different occupancies in the same building, should have no openings other than those for –
- (a) means of escape in case of fire – when a fire-resisting self-closing door (see paragraphs 4.29 to 4.35) having the same period of fire resistance as that of the compartment wall should be provided; and
  - (b) the passage of a pipe – when the opening in the wall should comply with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47.

## Diagram 4.2 Junction of compartment wall and roof

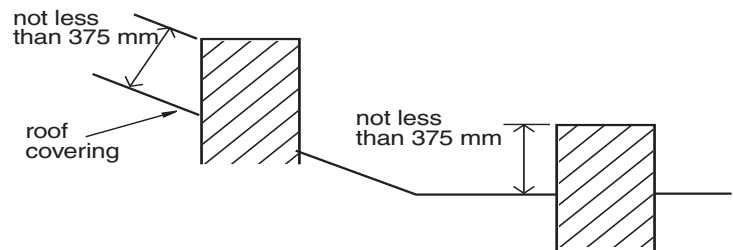
para 4.21 (a) and (b)



**(a) Any building**



**(b) Building of Purpose Group  
1, 2(b), 3 or 5 not more than  
15 m in height**



**(c) Any building**

---

## Openings in other compartment walls and in compartment floors

- 4.23 A compartment wall (other than one described in paragraph 4.22) and a compartment floor should have no openings other than those –
- (a) having a fire-resisting self-closing door (see paragraph 4.29 to 4.35);
  - (b) for the passage of pipes, ventilation ducts, chimneys, appliance ventilation duct or duct encasing one or more flue pipes – when the opening in the compartment wall or compartment floor should comply with paragraphs 4.43 to 4.47;
  - (c) for a waste chute system constructed of non-combustible materials;
  - (d) for an atrium designed in accordance with BS 5588-7; and
  - (e) for a protected shaft which complies with the provisions of paragraph 4.25 to 4.28.
- 4.24 The combined width of openings for fire doors in a compartment wall should be not more than 25% of the length of the compartment wall.

## Protected shafts between compartments

- 4.25 A protected shaft should only be used to accommodate stairs, lifts, escalators, chutes, ducts, pipes, sanitary accommodation and washrooms. Where a protected shaft contains a protected stairway, Section 2 imposes additional requirements (see paragraphs 2.69 to 2.73) and where it contains a firefighting stairway Section 6 imposes additional requirements (see paragraphs 6.3 to 6.6).

The construction enclosing a protected shaft, other than a wall which is part of an external wall, should –

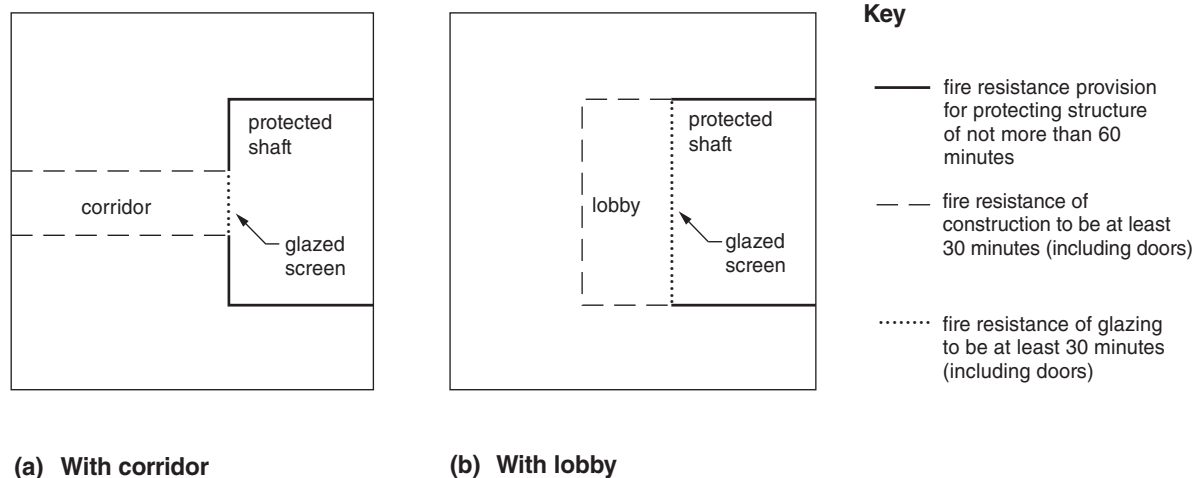
- (a) form a complete barrier to fire between the different compartments which the shaft connects;
- (b) have the same fire resistance as the compartment through which it is passing, other than where a glazed screen complying with paragraph 4.26 is provided; and
- (c) satisfy the provisions regarding ventilation in paragraph 4.27 and regarding the treatment of openings in paragraph 4.28.

## Glazed screens in protected shafts

- 4.26 Glazing may be incorporated in the wall between a protected shaft containing a stairway, and a corridor or lobby which gives access to that stairway provided that –
- (a) the protected shaft is not a firefighting shaft;
  - (b) the protected shaft is not required to have more than 60 minutes fire resistance; and
  - (c) the glazing has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance in respect of integrity; and either –
    - (i) the glazing is limited in extent in accordance with Table 2.8; or
    - (ii) the corridor or lobby has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance (see Diagram 4.3).

### Diagram 4.3 Glazed screen separating protected shaft from corridor or lobby

see para 4.26(c)



### Pipes for oil or gas and ventilation ducts in protected shafts

4.27 Where a protected shaft contains –

- (a) a stairway and/or a lift it should not contain –
  - (i) a pipe conveying oil, other than in the mechanism of a hydraulic lift; or
  - (ii) a ventilation duct, other than a duct provided for the purposes of pressurizing the shaft to keep it free from smoke in the event of fire or a duct provided solely for ventilating the stairway; and
- (b) a pipe conveying flammable gas it should be adequately ventilated directly to external air by ventilation openings at both high and low levels in the shaft. Any pipe conveying natural gas or LPG should be of screwed steel or of all welded steel construction.

### Openings in protected shafts

- 4.28 (a) Where the wall of a protected shaft is common to two or more buildings no opening should be provided in that wall other than for –
- (i) means of escape in case of fire – when a fire-resisting self-closing door, having the same period of fire resistance as the protected shaft, should be provided; and
  - (ii) the passage of a pipe – when the opening should comply with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47.

- 
- (b) Other than in walls subject to sub-paragraph (a) and external walls, a protected shaft should only have openings for –
- (i) a fire-resisting self-closing door which complies with paragraph 4.29;
  - (ii) the passage of a pipe where the opening complies with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47;
  - (iii) where the shaft is or contains a ventilation duct – the inlets to, outlets from and opening for a ventilation duct which complies with paragraph 4.44;
  - (iv) where the shaft is pressurized for the purposes of paragraph 2.64 – the inlet from and opening for the ductwork; and
  - (v) where the shaft contains a lift – the passage of lift cables into a lift motor room. Where the motor room is at the bottom of the shaft the opening should be as small as practicable.

## Fire doors

4.29 A fire door should have the performance appropriate to the location given in Table 4.5 and should be fitted with an automatic self-closing device (other than those fire doors to cupboards and ducts, which are to be kept locked shut when not in use).

4.30 (a) Under National determination fire doors are classified by their performance under test to BS 476: Part 22 in respect of integrity expressed in minutes. A suffix (S) is added for doors where smoke leakage at ambient temperatures is to be restricted.

(b) Under European determination fire doors are classified by their performance with reference to Commission Decision 2000/367/EC of 3rd May 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof. All fire doors should be classified in accordance with BS EN 13501-2 Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 2: Classification using data from fire resistance tests, excluding ventilation services. Performance in respect of integrity (E) is expressed in minutes. An additional classification of 'Sa' is used where smoke leakage at ambient temperatures is to be restricted. The fire resistance tests are –

- (i) BS EN 1634-1 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows;
- (ii) BS EN 1634-2 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 2: Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware;
- (iii) BS EN 1634-3 Fire Resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies – Part 3: Smoke control doors and shutters; and
- (iv) BS EN 81-58 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts – Examination and tests – Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test, which may be used for lift landing doors in accordance with European Parliament Council Directive 95/16/EC of 29/06/1995 implementing the Lifts Regulations 1997.

**Table 4.5 Performance of fire doors**

Location of door	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to BS 476: Part 22 <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to the relevant European standard <sup>(3)</sup>
1 In a compartment wall separating buildings	As for the wall in which the door is fitted, but a minimum of 60	As for the wall in which the door is fitted, but a minimum of 60
2 In a compartment wall not described in item 1 above – (a) where it separates a flat from a space in common use (b) where it forms part of a protected shaft forming a stairway situated wholly or partly above the adjoining ground in a building of Purpose Group 1(a), 2, 3 or 5 (c) enclosing a protected shaft forming a stairway not described in (b) above (d) enclosing a protected shaft forming a lift or service shaft (e) not described in (a), (b), (c) or (d) above	30S <sup>(2)</sup>  30S <sup>(2)</sup>  Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum and with suffix S  Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum  As for the wall it is fitted in, but with suffix S if the door is used for progressive horizontal evacuation	E30Sa  E30Sa  Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum and with suffix Sa  Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum  As for the wall it is fitted in, but with suffix Sa if the door is used for progressive horizontal evacuation
3 In a compartment floor	As for the floor in which it is fitted	As for the floor in which it is fitted
4 In the wall of a protected shaft, not described in items 2(b), (c) or (d) above, which is – (a) a protected stairway (other than one described in item 9 below) (b) a lift shaft or a service shaft (c) any other shaft	30S <sup>(2)</sup>  30 30S <sup>(2)</sup>	E30Sa  E30 E30Sa
5 In the enclosure of – (a) a protected lobby or protected corridor to a stairway (b) a protected lobby approach to a lift shaft [see paragraph 2.66(b)] (c) any other protected corridor (d) a place of special fire hazard	30S <sup>(2)</sup>  30S <sup>(2)</sup>  20S <sup>(2)</sup> 30S <sup>(2)</sup>	E30Sa  E30Sa  E20Sa E30Sa
6 In an external wall and giving access to an external escape route	30	E30
7 Subdividing – (a) corridors connecting alternative storey exits (b) dead-end portions of corridors from the remainder of the corridor	20S <sup>(2)</sup>  20S <sup>(2)</sup>	E20Sa  E20Sa



**Table 4.5 Performance of fire doors (cont'd)**

Location of door	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to BS 476: Part 22 <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to the relevant European standard <sup>(3)</sup>
8 Any door – (a) within a cavity barrier (b) between a dwellinghouse and a garage (c) in the enclosure to a communal area in sheltered housing	30 30 30S <sup>(2)</sup>	E30 E30 E30Sa
9 Any door – (a) forming part of the enclosures to a protected stair in a single family dwellinghouse (b) within any other fire-resisting construction in a dwelling	20 20	E20 E20

**Notes:**

(1) To BS 476: Part 22 (or BS 476: Part 8 subject to paragraph 4.5).

(2) Unless pressurization techniques complying with BS EN 12101-6 are used, these doors should also –

(a) have a leakage rate not exceeding 3 m<sup>3</sup>/m/hour (head and jambs only) when tested at 25 Pa under BS 476: Section 31.1; or

(b) meet the additional classification requirements of 'Sa' when tested to BS EN 1634-3, Fire resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies, Part 3 – Smoke control doors and shutters.

(3) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

4.31 The method of test exposure is from each side of the door separately, except in the case of lift doors, which are tested from the landing side only.

Any test evidence used to substantiate the fire resistance rating of a door or shutter should be carefully checked to ensure that it adequately demonstrates compliance and is applicable to the complete installed assembly. Small differences in detail (such as glazing apertures, intumescent strips, door frames and ironmongery etc.) may significantly affect the rating.

4.32 A fire door should only be held open by –

- (a) a fusible link, provided that the provisions of paragraph 4.34 are complied with where the door opening is provided for means of escape;
- (b) an automatic release mechanism complying with BS 5839-3 provided that –
  - (i) the release mechanism is activated by an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector located on either side of the door;
  - (ii) the door can be closed manually; and
  - (iii) the door does not give access to a firefighting stairway; or

---

(c) a door co-ordinator device which co-ordinates the closing sequence of rebated double leaf swing doors.

4.33 Unless shown to be satisfactory when tested as part of a fire door assembly, the hinges on which a fire door is hung should be made from material having a melting point of at least 800°C.

4.34 Where an opening is provided for, or opens onto, a means of escape and it is intended that the door should be held open by a fusible link, a second door having 30 minutes fire resistance should be provided. This second door should be capable of closing the opening and be easily opened by hand.

Where two fire doors are fitted in the same opening and each door is capable of closing that opening, the total fire resistance may be taken as the sum of their individual fire resistance.

4.35 All fire doors, other than those listed below, should be marked with an appropriate fire safety sign complying with BS 5499: Part 1 indicating whether the door is –

- (a) to be kept closed when not in use;
- (b) to be kept locked shut when not in use; or
- (c) held open by an automatic release mechanism.

Signs should be provided on both sides of the door except for doors to cupboards and service ducts which should be marked on the outside only.

The following fire doors do not require to be marked –

- (i) doors within dwellinghouses;
- (ii) doors to and within flats;
- (iii) bedroom doors in Purpose Group 2 buildings; and
- (iv) lift doors.

## Provision of cavity barriers

- 4.36 To restrict the spread of smoke and flame through concealed spaces in the construction of a building, cavity barriers should be provided –
- (a) in a building of any purpose group –
    - (i) at the intersection of fire-resisting construction and an element containing a cavity as shown in Diagram 4.4; and
    - (ii) as set out in Table 4.6 for the appropriate purpose group of the building and the specified locations.

[Note – alternative arrangements for items 1, 3 and 4 are shown in Diagram 4.5 and for item 2 in Diagram 4.6. Notes (3) and (4) to Table 4.6 are supported by Diagrams 4.7 and 4.8 respectively]; and
  - (b) in a building of Purpose Group 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7 – so that the maximum dimension of a cavity, (other than one described in paragraph 4.40 or 4.41) should be not greater than that given in Table 4.7 for the appropriate location of the cavity.
- 4.37 A cavity barrier should not be used above a compartment wall to complete the line of compartmentation, i.e. a compartment wall should be carried up to a compartment floor or to a roof.

**Table 4.6 Provision of cavity barriers**

Item	Cavity barriers to be provided	Purpose group to which the provision applies			
		1a	1b & c	2	3, 4, 5, 6 and 7
1	At the top of an external cavity wall and at the junction between an external cavity wall and a compartment wall that separates buildings, except where the external cavity complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	✓	✓	✓
2	Above <sup>(1)</sup> the enclosures to a protected stairway in a dwellinghouse of three or more storeys (see Diagram 4.6) <sup>(3)</sup>	N/A	✓	N/A	N/A
3	At the junction between an external cavity wall and every compartment floor and compartment wall, except where the external cavity wall complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	N/A	✓	✓
4	At the junction between a cavity wall and every compartment floor, compartment wall, or other wall or door assembly which forms a fire-resisting barrier, except where the external cavity wall complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	N/A	✓	✓
5	In a protected escape route, above <sup>(1)</sup> and below any fire-resisting construction which is not carried full storey height <sup>(2)</sup> or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering <sup>(3)</sup>	✓	N/A	✓	✓

**Table 4.6 Provision of cavity barriers (cont'd)**

Item	Cavity barriers to be provided	Purpose group to which the provision applies			
		1a	1b & c	2	3, 4, 5, 6 and 7
6	Above <sup>(1)</sup> any bedroom partitions which are not carried full storey height <sup>(2)</sup> , or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering <sup>(3)</sup>	N/A	N/A	✓	N/A
7	Above <sup>(1)</sup> any corridor enclosures which are not carried full storey height <sup>(2)</sup> , or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering, where the corridor (which is not a protected corridor) is subdivided to prevent fire or smoke affecting two alternative escape routes simultaneously (see Section 2) <sup>(4)</sup>	N/A	N/A	✓	✓
8	To subdivide any cavity (including any roof space) so that the distance between cavity barriers does not exceed the dimensions given in Table 4.7	N/A	N/A	✓	✓
9	Within the void behind the external face of rain screencladding at every floor level, and on the line of compartment walls abutting the external wall, of buildings which have a floor more than 18 m above ground level	✓	N/A	✓	N/A
10	At the edges of cavities (including around openings) <sup>(5)</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓

Notes:

✓ Provision applies.

N/A Not applicable.

(1) Above and in the same plane as the element.

(2) Full storey height means from structural floor slab to the underside of the structural floor above.

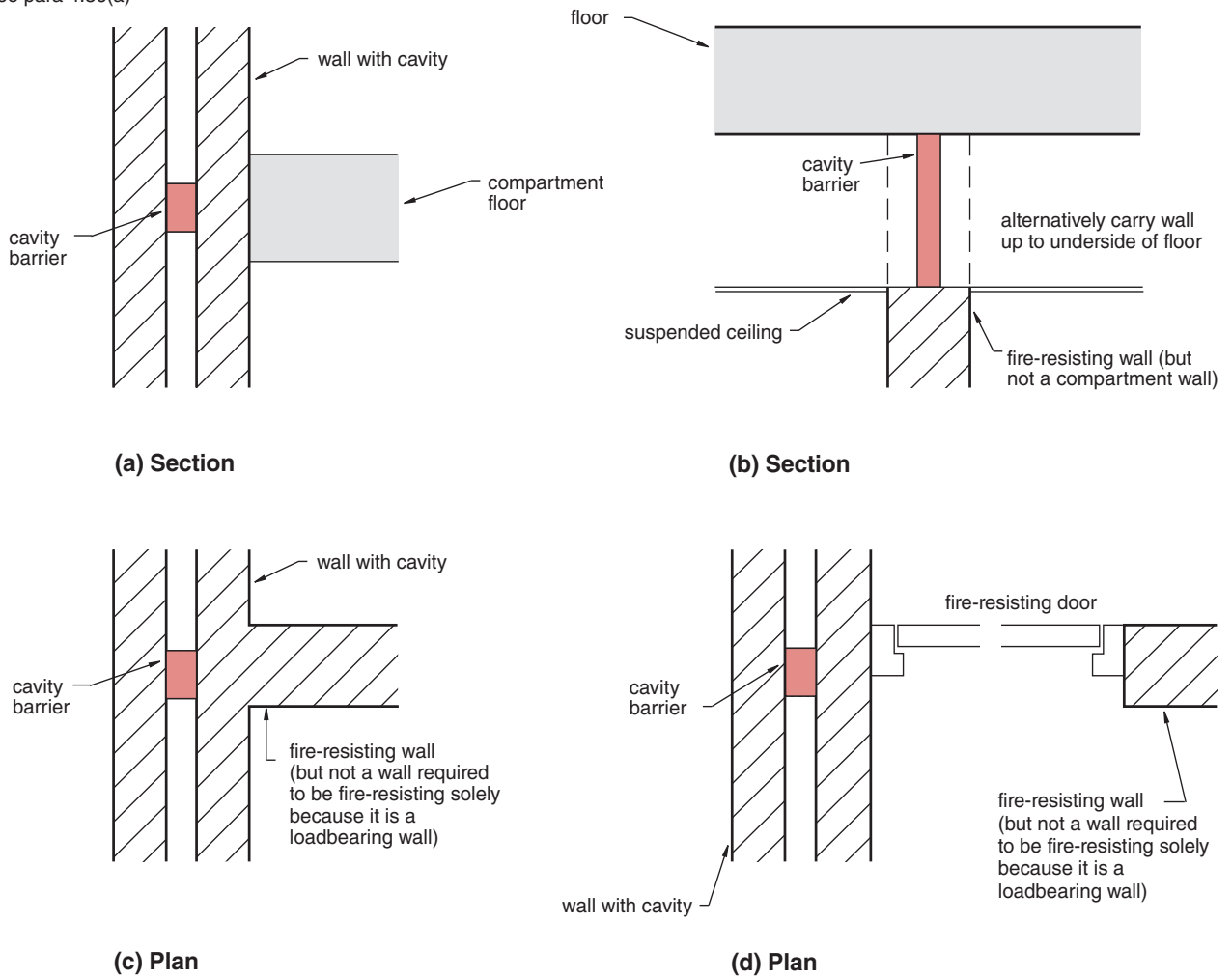
(3) The cavity barriers in items 2, 5 and 6 are not required where the cavity is enclosed on the lower side by a fire-resisting ceiling (as shown in Diagram 4.7) which extends throughout the building, compartment or separated part.

(4) The cavity barrier in item 7 is not required where the storey is subdivided by fire-resisting construction carried full storey height<sup>(2)</sup> and passing through the line of subdivision of the corridor (see Diagram 4.8), or where the cavity is enclosed on the lower side as described in Note (3) above.

(5) Cavity barriers provided around window or door openings may be formed by window or door frames (see paragraph 4.38).

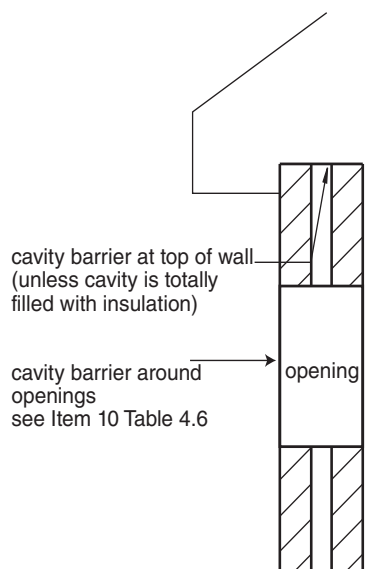
## Diagram 4.4 Cavity barriers at intersections

see para 4.36(a)



## Diagram 4.5 Cavity walls excluded from certain provisions for cavity barriers

see para 4.35(a), 4.39(a) and Table 4.6 Items 1, & 4



### Section

external cavity wall of two leaves of brick, block or concrete each at least 75 mm thick – cavity width 300 mm maximum

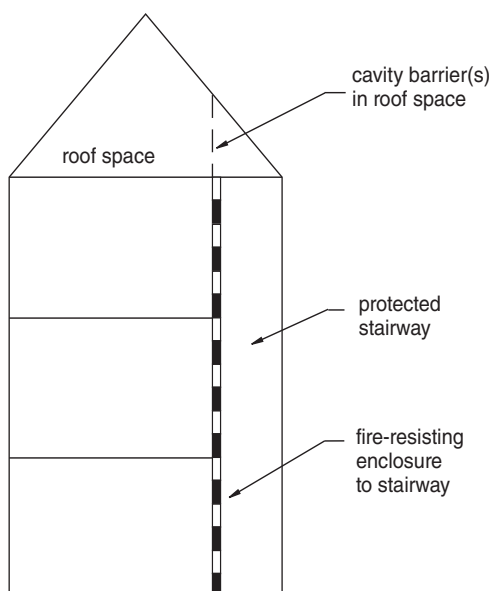
### Notes:

Combustible material should not be placed in or exposed to the cavity except for –

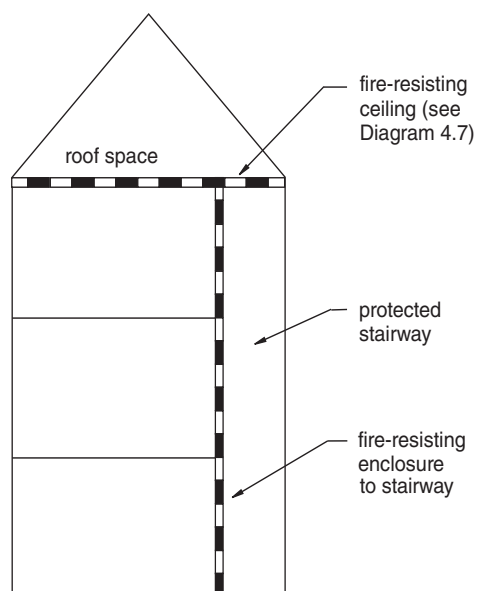
- (a) timber lintels, window or door frames, or the ends of timber joists;
- (b) pipe, conduit or cable;
- (c) d.p.c., flashing, cavity closer or wall tie;
- (d) thermal insulating material; or
- (e) a domestic meter cupboard provided that – there are no more than two cupboards per dwelling; the opening in the outer wall leaf is not more than 800 mm x 500 mm for each cupboard; and the inner leaf is not penetrated except by a sleeve not more than 80 mm x 80 mm, which is fire-stopped.

## Diagram 4.6 Alternative arrangement of cavity barriers in roof space over a protected stairway in a dwellinghouse of three or more storeys

see para 4.36(a) and Table 4.6 item 2



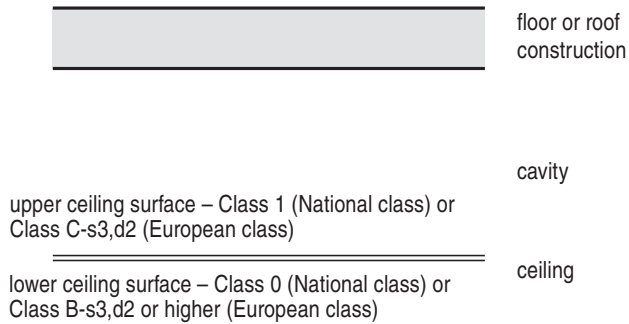
(a) With cavity barrier(s) as required by Table 4.6



(b) Alternative arrangement with fire-resisting ceiling

## Diagram 4.7 Fire-resisting ceiling below a cavity

see para 4.36(a), 4.40(b), Table 4.6 note(3) and Diag. 4.6



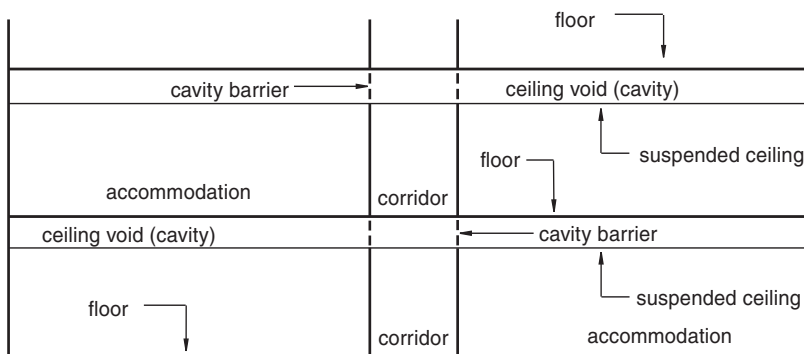
### Note:

The ceiling should –

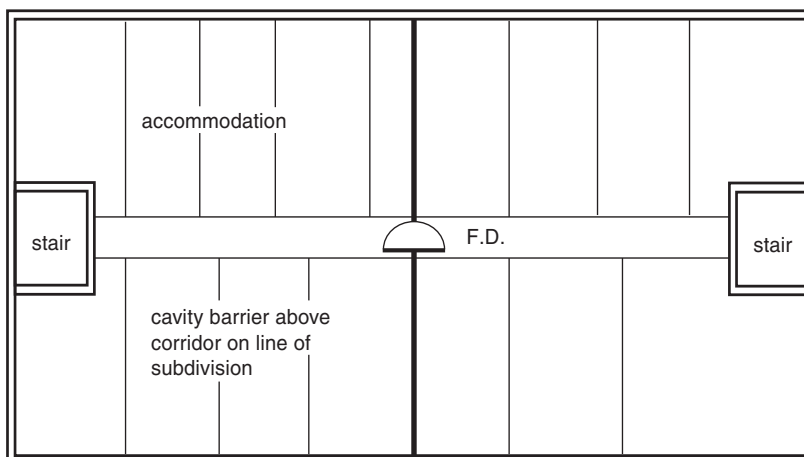
- (a) have at least 30 minutes fire resistance;
- (b) be imperforate except for an opening described in paragraph 4.42;
- (c) extend throughout the building or compartment; and
- (d) not be easily demountable.

## Diagram 4.8 Alternative arrangements for corridor enclosure

see para 4.36(a) and Table 4.6 note(4)



(a) Section showing use of cavity barriers above the corridor enclosure as required by Table 4.6



(b) Alternative arrangement plan showing subdivision of the storey by fire-resisting construction [see Table 4.6, item 7 and note (4)]

the subdivision is carried full storey height and includes subdivision of the corridor.  
a cavity barrier is used in the corridor ceiling void, over the corridor subdivision.

### Key

- F.D. fire-resisting door
- fire-resisting construction

---

## Construction of cavity barriers

- 4.38 A cavity barrier should be constructed to provide fire resistance of not less than 30 minutes in respect of integrity and 15 minutes in respect of insulation (see item 15 of Table 4.1), however, a cavity barrier in a stud partition or wall may be formed of –
- (a) steel at least 0.5 mm thick;
  - (b) timber at least 38 mm thick;
  - (c) polyethylene sleeved mineral wool or mineral wool slab, in either case under compression when installed in the cavity; or
  - (d) calcium silicate, cement based or gypsum based boards at least 12 mm thick.

A cavity barrier may be formed by any construction provided for another purpose if that construction meets the provisions for a cavity barrier.

- 4.39 A cavity barrier should be tightly fitted and fixed in position. Where this is not possible, e.g. in the case of a junction with slates or profiled sheeting, the junction should be fire-stopped in accordance with paragraphs 4.45 to 4.47.

The fixing of a cavity barrier should be such that the performance of the cavity barrier is unlikely to be made ineffective by –

- (a) the movement of the building due to subsidence, shrinkage or thermal change and movement of the external envelope due to wind;
- (b) the collapse in a fire of any service which penetrates it;
- (c) the failure in a fire of its fixings or supporting structure; and
- (d) the failure in a fire of any material or construction which the cavity barrier abuts, e.g. if a cavity barrier is connected to a suspended ceiling, collapse of the ceiling should not cause premature failure of the cavity barrier.

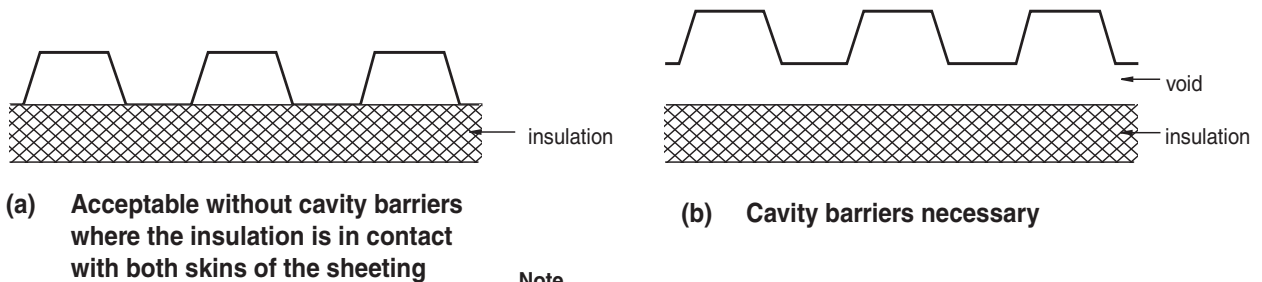
## Cavities not requiring subdivision

- 4.40 The provisions of paragraph 4.36(b) should not apply to a cavity which is –
- (a) in a masonry or concrete external cavity wall complying with Diagram 4.5;
  - (b) in a floor void or in a roof void where the cavity does not exceed 30 m in extent and is enclosed on its lower side by a fire-resisting ceiling (complying with Diagram 4.7) which extends throughout the building or compartment;
  - (c) below a floor next to the ground where the cavity is not greater than 1 m in height or is not normally accessible by people. However, this should not apply where there is any opening in the floor such that it is possible for combustible material to accumulate in the cavity (in this case cavity barriers and access for cleaning should be provided);
  - (d) formed behind the external skin in rain-screen external wall construction, or by over-cladding an existing masonry or concrete external wall or an existing concrete roof, provided that the cavity does not contain combustible insulation and the provisions of Table 4.6 Item 9 are complied with; and



## Diagram 4.9 Provision of cavity barriers in double-skinned profiled insulated roof sheeting

see para 4.40(e)



### Note

See paragraph 4.21 regarding the provision of a firebreak at the junction of a double skinned insulated roof and a compartment wall.

(e) between double-skinned, profiled, insulated, roof sheeting provided that –

- (i) the sheeting is a material of limited combustibility;
- (ii) both surfaces of the insulation layer have a surface spread of flame classification not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class); and
- (iii) the insulation is in contact with the inner and outer skins of sheeting as shown in Diagram 4.9(a).

4.41 Where the cavity is over an undivided room which –

- (a) exceeds the appropriate maximum dimension for a cavity in Table 4.7, cavity barriers need only be provided on the line of the enclosing walls of that room, provided that they are not more than 40 m apart and that the surfaces exposed in the cavity are not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class); or
- (b) exceeds 40 m (in either direction on plan), cavity barriers need not be provided where –
  - (i) the room and the cavity together are compartmented from the rest of the building;
  - (ii) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-1 is fitted in the building;
  - (iii) the surface of the ceiling exposed in the cavity is of Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class) and the ceiling supports and fixings in the cavity are of non-combustible construction;
  - (iv) the surface spread of flame classification of any pipe insulation in the cavity is not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class);
  - (v) any electrical wiring in the cavity is laid in metal trays or in metal conduit;
  - (vi) any other material in the cavity is a material of limited combustibility; and

**Table 4.7 Maximum dimension of a cavity in Purpose Group 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 buildings <sup>(1)</sup>**

Location of cavity	Class of surface exposed in cavity (excluding surface of any pipe, cable or conduit, or insulation to any pipe)		Maximum dimension of a cavity in any direction (m)
	National class <sup>(2)</sup>	European <sup>(2)(3)</sup> class	
Between a roof and a ceiling	Any	Any	20
Any other cavity	Class 0 or Class 1	Class A1; Class A2-s3,d2; Class B-s3,d2; or Class C-s3,d2	20
	A class other than Class 0 or Class 1	A class other than any of the classes in the row above	10

Notes :

(1) Exceptions to these provisions are given in paragraphs 4.40 and 4.41.

(2) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

(3) Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

(vii) where the cavity is used as a plenum – the recommendations of BS 5588-9 in relation to recirculating air distribution systems are complied with.

### Openings in cavity barriers

- 4.42 There should be no openings in a cavity barrier other than those for –
- a fire door which has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance and complies with paragraphs 4.29 to 4.35;
  - the passage of a pipe which complies with paragraph 4.43;
  - the passage of a cable, a conduit or tray containing one or more cables;
  - an opening fitted with a suitably mounted automatic fire damper; and
  - a duct which (unless it is fire-resisting) is fitted with a suitably mounted automatic fire damper where it passes through the cavity barrier.

## Pipes penetrating fire separating elements

- 4.43 Where a pipe passes through a fire separating element it should be –
- (a) provided with a suitable proprietary sealing system which has been shown by test to maintain the fire resistance of the fire separating element; or
  - (b) where a proprietary sealing system is not used –
    - (i) of a diameter not more than the relevant nominal internal diameter given in Table 4.8, with the opening as small as is practicable and fire-stopped around the pipe; or
    - (ii) of lead, aluminium, aluminium alloy, fibre-cement or uPVC, having a maximum internal diameter not more than 160 mm and be within a non-combustible sleeve [see Table 4.8 Note (1)] as shown in Diagram 4.10.

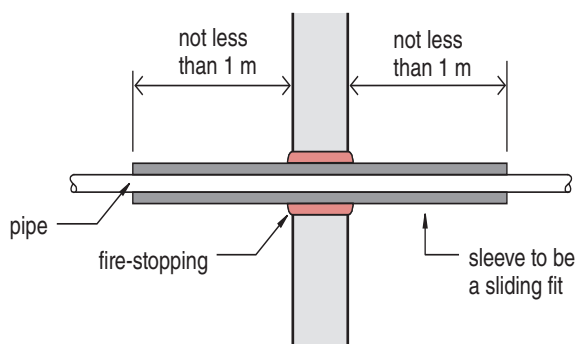
### Ventilation ducts penetrating fire separating elements

- 4.44 Where a ventilation or air conditioning duct passes through a fire separating element it should comply with an appropriate method for maintaining the fire resistance of the wall, floor or barrier given in BS 5588-9.

Fire dampers should be tested to BS EN 1366-2 and be classified to BS EN 13501-3. They should have an E classification not less than 60 minutes. Fire and smoke dampers should also be tested to BS EN 1366-2 and be classified to BS EN 13501-3. They should have an ES classification not less than 60 minutes.

**Diagram 4.10 Pipes penetrating fire separating elements**

see para 4.42(b)



**Note:**

The opening in the construction to be as small as practicable with fire-stopping between sleeve and construction.

**Table 4.8 Maximum nominal internal diameter of pipes passing through fire separating elements**

Situation	Pipe material and maximum nominal internal diameter (mm)		
	Non-combustible material <sup>(1)</sup>	Lead, aluminium, aluminium alloy, uPVC <sup>(2)</sup> , fibre-cement	Any other material
1 Construction (but not a wall separating buildings) enclosing a protected shaft which is not a stairway or a lift shaft	160	110	40
2 (a) A wall separating dwellinghouses (b) A compartment wall or compartment floor between flats	160	160 (stack pipe) <sup>(3)</sup> 110 (branch pipe) <sup>(3)</sup>	40
3 Any other situation	160	40	40

**Notes:**

(1) A non-combustible material (such as cast iron, copper or steel) which if exposed to a temperature of 800°C, will not soften or fracture to the extent that flame or hot gas will pass through the wall of the pipe.

(2) uPVC pipes complying with either BS 4514 or BS 5255 or BS EN 1329-1.

(3) These diameters are only in relation to pipes forming part of an above-ground drainage system which is enclosed as shown in Diagram 4.11. In other cases the maximum diameters against Situation 3 apply.

### Fire-stopping

- 4.45 In addition to any other provision in this Technical Booklet for fire-stopping, fire-stopping should be provided at –
- (a) all joints and imperfections of fit between elements which serve as a barrier to the passage of fire; and
  - (b) all openings for pipes, ducts, cables, conduits or trays which pass through any fire separating element, and such openings should be –
    - (i) as few in number as possible; and
    - (ii) as small as is practicable.
- 4.46 To prevent the displacement of fire-stopping it should be supported by, or reinforced with, a material of limited combustibility –
- (a) where it is a non-rigid material (unless it has been shown by test not to require such support or reinforcement); and
  - (b) in all locations where its unsupported span is more than 100 mm.
- 4.47 In addition to proprietary fire-stopping and sealing systems, which have been shown by test to be suitable, the following materials may be suitable as fire-stopping in situations appropriate to the particular material –

- (i) cement mortar;
- (ii) gypsum based plaster;
- (iii) cement or gypsum based vermiculite/perlite mixes;
- (iv) glass fibre, crushed rock, blast furnace slag or ceramic based products (with or without resin binders); and
- (v) intumescent mastics.

### Flues and heating appliance ventilation ducts penetrating compartment walls and compartment floors

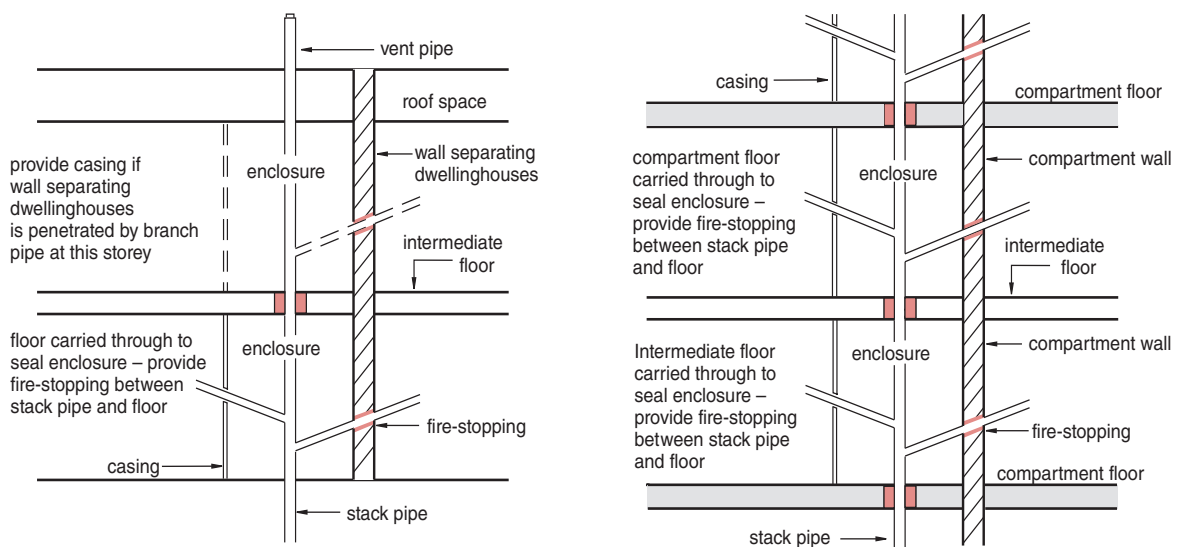
4.48 Where a flue, a duct containing more than one flue, or an appliance ventilation duct –

- (a) passes through a compartment floor or compartment wall; or
- (b) is built into a compartment wall,

the walls enclosing the flue or duct should have a period of fire resistance of not less than half that required for the compartment wall or compartment floor and be of non-combustible construction, as shown in Diagram 4.12.

**Diagram 4.11 Enclosure for drainage or water supply pipes**

see Table 4.8 note 3



**(a) Dwellinghouse with any number of storeys**

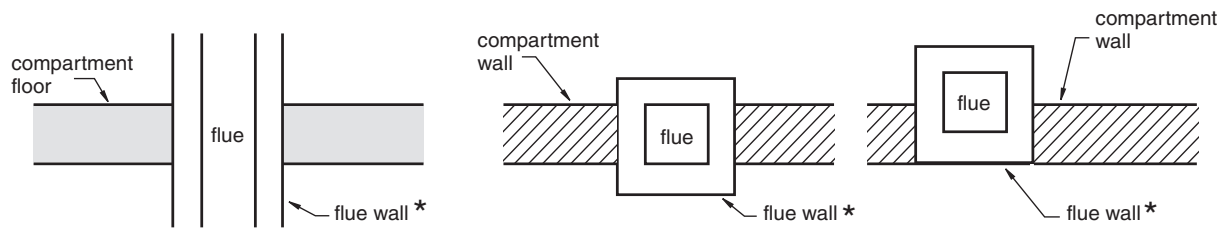
**(b) Other buildings**

**Notes:**

- 1 The enclosure should –
  - (a) be bounded by a compartment wall or floor, an outside wall, an intermediate floor or a casing [see specification at (2)];
  - (b) have internal surfaces (except framing members) of Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class);
  - (c) not have an access panel which opens into a circulation space or a bedroom; and
  - (d) be used only for drainage, water supply or vent pipes for a drainage system.
- 2 The casing should –
  - (a) be impermeate except for an opening for a pipe or an access panel;
  - (b) not be of sheet metal; and
  - (c) have (including any access panel) not less than 30 minutes fire resistance.
- 3 The opening for a pipe, either in the structure or the casing, should be as small as possible and fire-stopped around the pipe.

## Diagram 4.12 Flues in compartment walls and compartment floors

see para 4.48



**(a) Section of flue passing through a compartment floor**

**(b) Plans of flues built into compartment wall**

**Note:**

- \* In all cases flue walls should have a fire resistance of at least one half of that required for the compartment wall or compartment floor and be of non-combustible construction.

---

## Car parks for light vehicles

- 4.49 All materials used in the construction of a building, separated part or compartment used for car parking should be non-combustible other than –
- (a) a surface finish which meets the relevant provisions of Sections 3 and 5 which –
    - (i) is applied to a floor or roof of the car park; and
    - (ii) is applied within any adjoining building, separated part or compartment – to the structure enclosing the car park;
  - (b) a fire door;
  - (c) an attendant's kiosk which does not exceed 15 m<sup>2</sup> in area; and
  - (d) any shop mobility facility which does not exceed 30 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area.

### Open-sided car parks

- 4.50 A car park may be regarded as an open-sided car park for the purposes of Table 4.2 [i.e. Purpose Group 7(b)(i)] where, in addition to complying with paragraph 4.49 –
- (a) it has no basement storeys;
  - (b) it is naturally ventilated by permanent openings, at each car parking level, having an aggregate ventilation area of not less than 5% of the floor area at that level, with not less than half that ventilation area equally divided in two opposing walls and distributed to provide effective cross-ventilation; and
  - (c) where the building is also used for any other purpose – that part forming the car park is a separated part.

### Car parks which are not open-sided

- 4.51 Where a car park does not comply with the provisions of paragraph 4.50 it should not be regarded as open-sided for the purposes of Table 4.2 [i.e. it falls in Purpose Group 7(b)(ii)]. However, there is a need for ventilation in such a car park, therefore in addition to the provisions of paragraph 4.49 it should have either –
- (a) natural ventilation at each storey –
    - (i) by permanent openings at each car parking level, having an aggregate ventilation area of not less than 2.5% of the floor area at that level, with not less than half that ventilation area equally divided in two opposing walls and distributed to provide effective cross-ventilation; or
    - (ii) by suitable vents at ceiling level on each car parking level having an aggregate area of permanent opening not less than 2.5% of the floor area and so arranged as to have a through flow of air; or

- 
- (b) a system of mechanical ventilation where –
- (i) the system is independent of any other ventilation system and designed to operate at 6 air changes per hour for normal extraction and at 10 air changes per hour in a fire condition;
  - (ii) the system is designed to operate in two parts, each capable of extracting 50% of the rates set out in (i) above and designed so that each part may operate singly or simultaneously; each part of the system should have an independent power supply which will operate in the event of failure of the main supply;
  - (iii) extract points are arranged so that 50% are at high level and 50% at low level; and
  - (iv) the fans are rated to run at 300°C for not less than 60 minutes, and the ductwork and fixings are constructed of materials having a melting point of not less than 800°C.

(See Technical Booklet K for guidance on normal ventilation of car parks.)



---

## Shopping complexes

- 4.52 Whilst the provisions in this Technical Booklet about shops should generally be capable of application in cases where a shop is contained in a single separated building, the provisions may not be appropriate where a shop forms part of a complex. These may include covered malls providing access to a number of shops and common servicing areas. In particular, the provisions about maximum compartment size may be difficult to meet, bearing in mind that it would generally not be practical to compartment a shop from a mall serving it. (To a lesser extent, the provisions about fire resistance, walls separating shop units, surfaces and boundary distances may also pose problems.)
- 4.53 To ensure a satisfactory standard of fire safety in shopping complexes, alternative measures and additional compensatory features to the provisions set out in this Section are needed. Such features are set out in Sections 5 and 6 of BS 5588-10 and the relevant recommendations of those sections should be followed.

---

## Insulating core panels used for internal structures

- 4.54 Insulating core panel systems are used for external cladding as well as for internal structures. However, whilst both types of panel system have unique fire behaviour characteristics, it is those used for internal structures that can present particular problems with regard to fire spread.

The most common use of insulating core panels, when used for internal structures, is to provide an enclosure in which a chilled or sub zero environment can be generated for the production, preservation, storage and distribution of perishable foodstuffs. However, this type of construction is also used in many other applications, particularly where the maintenance of a hygienic environment is essential.

These panels typically consist of an inner core sandwiched between, and bonded to facings of galvanised steel, often with a PVC facing for hygiene purposes. The panels are then formed into a structure by jointing systems, usually designed to provide an insulating and hygienic performance. The panel structure can be free standing, but is usually attached to the building structure by lightweight fixings or hangers in the case of ceilings.

The most common forms of insulation in present use are polyisocyanurate, mineral fibre, phenolic, polystyrene (cold stores), extruded polystyrene and composite polymers such as syntactic phenolic.

### Fire behaviour of the core materials and fixing systems

- 4.55 The degradation of polymeric materials can be expected when exposed to radiated/conducted heat from a fire, with the resulting production of large quantities of smoke. It is recognised that the potential for problems in fires involving mineral fibre cores is less than those for polymeric core materials.

In addition, irrespective of the type of core material, the panel, when exposed to the high temperatures of a developed fire, will tend to delaminate between the facing and core material, due to a combination of expansion of the metal facing and softening of the bond line.

Therefore once it is involved, either directly or indirectly in a fire, the panel will have lost most of its structural integrity. Stability will then be dependant on the method of fixing to the structure. For systems that are not fixed through both facings the stability of the system will then depend on the residual structural strength of the non-exposed facing, the interlocking joint between panels and the fixing system.

Most jointing or fixing systems for these systems have an extremely limited structural integrity performance in developed fire conditions. If the fire starts to heat up the support fixings or structure to which they are attached, then there is a real chance of total collapse of the panel system.

Where panels are used as the lining to a building the insulating nature of these panels, together with their sealed joints, means that fire can spread behind the panels, hidden from the occupants of occupied rooms/spaces. With some thermoplastic cores fire can also spread between the panel facings.

---

This can prove to be a particular problem to firefighters as, due to the insulating properties of the cores, it may not be possible to track the spread of fire, even using infra red detection equipment. This difficulty, together with that of controlling the fire spread within and behind the panels, is likely to have a detrimental effect on the performance of the fixing systems, potentially leading to their complete and unexpected collapse, together with any associated equipment.

### **Firefighting**

- 4.56 When compared with other types of construction techniques, these panel systems therefore provide a unique combination of problems for firefighters, including –
- (a) hidden fire spread within panels with thermoplastic cores;
  - (b) production of large quantities of black toxic smoke and rapid fire spread leading to flashover; and
  - (c) hidden fire behind lining systems.

These three characteristics are common to both polyurethane and polystyrene cored panels, although the rate of fire spread in polyurethane cores is significantly less than that of polystyrene cores, especially when any external heat source is removed.

In addition, irrespective of the type of panel core, all systems are susceptible to delamination of the steel facing, collapse of the system and hidden fire spread behind the system.

### **Design recommendations**

- 4.57 To identify the appropriate solution, a risk assessment approach should be adopted. This would involve identifying the potential fire risk within the enclosures formed by the panel systems and then adopting one or more of the following at the design stage –
- (a) removing the risk;
  - (b) separating the risk from the panels by an appropriate distance;
  - (c) providing a fire suppression system for the risk;
  - (d) providing a fire suppression system for the enclosure;
  - (e) providing fire-resisting panels; and
  - (f) specifying appropriate materials/fixing and jointing systems.

In summary the performance of the building structure, including the insulating envelope, the superstructure, the substructure, etc., must be considered in relation to their performance in the event of a fire.

### **Specifying panel core materials**

---

4.58 Where at all possible the specification of panels with core materials appropriate to the application will help ensure an acceptable level of performance for panel systems, when involved in fire conditions. The following are examples in the provision of core materials which may be appropriate to the application concerned–

(a) Mineral fibre cores – cooking areas, hot areas, bakeries, fire breaks in combustible panels, fire stop panels and general fire protection.

(b) All cores – chill stores, cold stores, blast freezers, food factories and clean rooms.

Note – Core materials may be used in other circumstances where a risk assessment has been made and other appropriate fire precautions have been put in place.

### **Specifying materials/fixing and jointing systems**

4.59 The following are methods by which the stability of panel systems may be improved in the event of a fire, although they may not all be appropriate in every case.

(a) Insulating envelopes, support systems, and supporting structure should be designed to allow the envelope to remain structurally stable by alternative means such as catenary action following failure of the bond line between insulant core and facing materials. This particularly relates to ceilings and will typically require positive attachment of the lower faces of the insulant panels to supports.

(b) The building superstructure, together with any elements providing support to the insulating envelope, should be protected to prevent early collapse of the structure or the envelope.

Note – Irrespective of the type of panel provided, it will remain necessary to ensure that the supplementary support method supporting the panels remains stable for an appropriate time period under fire conditions. It is not practical to fire protect light gauge steel members such as purlins and sheeting rails which provide stability to building superstructures and these may be compromised at an early stage of a fire. Supplementary fire-protected heavier gauge steelwork members could be provided at wider intervals than purlins to provide restraint in the event of a fire.

(c) In designated high risk areas, consideration should be given to incorporating non-combustible insulant cored panels into wall and ceiling construction at intervals, or incorporating strips of non-combustible material into specified wall and ceiling panels, in order to provide a barrier to fire propagation through the insulant.

(d) Correct detailing of the insulating envelope should ensure that the combustible insulant is fully encapsulated by non-combustible facing materials which remain in place during a fire.

(e) The panels should incorporate pre-finished and sealed areas for penetration of services.

---

In addition, the details of construction of the insulating envelope should, particularly in relation to combustible insulant cores, prevent the core materials from becoming exposed to the fire and contributing to the fire load.

### **General**

- 4.60 Generally panels or panel systems should not be used to support machinery or other permanent loads.

Any cavity created by the arrangement of panels, their supporting structure or other building elements should be provided with suitable cavity barriers.

Examples of possible solutions and general guidance on insulating core panels construction can be found in the relevant chapters of the *Design, construction, specification and fire management of insulated envelopes for temperature controlled environments* published by the International Association of Cold Storage Contractors (European Division).

## Section 5 External fire spread

- 5.1 This Section contains provisions relating to the design and construction of –
- (a) external walls in order that –
    - (i) the risk of ignition from an external source to the outside surface of a building; and, the spread of flame over the external surface is restricted; and
    - (ii) the materials used to construct external walls and attachments to them and how they are assembled do not contribute to the rate of fire spread up the outside of a building; and
    - (iii) the spread of fire from one building to another is restricted; and
  - (b) roofs – in order that the risk of spread of flame and of fire penetration from an external source are restricted.

### Fire resistance of external walls

- 5.2 The external walls of a building are elements of structure and other than those areas which may be unprotected (as determined in accordance with paragraphs 5.10 to 5.12) should have the appropriate period of fire resistance given in Section 4.

### Combustibility of external walls

- 5.2A The external walls of a building should not provide a medium for fire spread if that is likely to be a risk to health and safety. Combustible materials, cavities in external walls and attachments to external walls can present such a risk, particularly in tall buildings. The guidance in this section is designed to reduce the risk of vertical fire spread in all buildings and the risk of ignition from external sources.
- 5.2B The external walls of buildings other than those described in Regulation 23(4) of the Building Regulations should achieve all the provisions given in paragraphs 5.3 to 5.4B which provide guidance on all of the following –
- (i) external surfaces;
  - (ii) materials and products; and
  - (iii) cavities and cavity barriers;

### External Surfaces

- 5.3 The external surface of an external wall (i.e. outermost external material) should meet the requirements given in Table 5.1A relevant to the height of the building and the distance between the building and the relevant boundary.

---

## Materials and Products

- 5.4 Where a building has a storey the floor of which is 18 m or more above ground level, any insulation material, and any filler material (such as the core materials of metal composite panels, sandwich panels and window spandrel panels but not including gaskets, sealants and similar) used in the construction of an external wall should be Class A2-s3, d2 or better. This restriction does not apply to masonry cavity wall construction which complies with Diagram 4.5 in Section 4. Where Regulation 23(2) applies, that regulation prevails over all the provisions in this paragraph.

Note 1: Best practice guidance for green walls (also called living walls) can be found in ***Fire performance of Green Roofs and Walls***.

### Cavities and cavity barriers

- 5.4A Cavity barriers should be provided in accordance with paragraphs 4.36 to 4.42.
- 5.4B In the case of an external wall construction, of a building which, by virtue of paragraph 4.40(d) (external cladding system with a masonry or concrete inner leaf), is not subject to the provisions of Table 4.7, the surfaces which face into cavities should also meet the provisions of Table 5.1A, and provisions for cavity barriers in Section 4, but where Regulation 23(2) applies, that regulation prevails over guidance provided in Table 5.1A and Section 4.

**Table 5.1A Reaction to fire performance of external surface of walls**

Building Type	Building height	Less than 1m from the relevant boundary	1m or more from the relevant boundary
'Relevant buildings' as defined in regulation 23(4)		Class A2-s1,d0 <sup>(1)</sup> or better	Class A2-s1, d0 <sup>(1)</sup> or better
Assembly and recreation	More than 18m	Class B-s3, d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better	From ground level to 18m: class C-s3, d2 <sup>(3)</sup> or better From 18m in height and above: class B-s3, d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better
	18m or less	Class B-s3,d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better	Up to 10m above ground level: class C-s3,d2 <sup>(3)</sup> or better Up to 10m above a roof or any part of the building to which the public have access: class C-s3, d2 <sup>(3)</sup> or better <sup>(4)</sup> From 10m in height and above: Class E-d2 or better
Any other building	More than 18m	Class B-s3, d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better	From ground level to 18m: class C-s3, d2 <sup>(3)</sup> or better From 18m in height and above: class B-s3, d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better
	18m or less	Class B-s3, d2 <sup>(2)</sup> or better	Class E-d2 or better

Notes:

In addition to the requirements within this table, buildings with a top occupied storey above 18m should also meet the provisions of paragraph 5.4.

(1) The restrictions for these buildings apply to all the materials used in the external wall and specified attachments (see paragraphs 5.4C to 5.4F for further guidance).

(2) Profiled or flat steel sheet at least 0.5mm thick with an organic coating of no more than 0.2mm thickness is also acceptable.

(3) Timber cladding at least 9mm thick is also acceptable.

(4) 10m is measured from the top surface of the roof.



---

## Regulation 23(2)

### Materials

- 5.4C Regulation 23(1) requires that materials used in building work are appropriate for the circumstances in which they are used. Regulation 23(2) sets requirements in respect of external walls and specified attachments in relevant buildings.

Note: Guidance on Regulation 23(1) can be found in Technical Booklet B.

- 5.4D Regulation 23(2) applies to any building with a storey at least 18m above ground level and which contains one or more dwellings; an institution; or a room for residential purposes (excluding any room in a hostel, hotel or a boarding house). It requires that all materials which become part of an external wall or specified attachment achieve European Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1, other than those exempted by Regulation 23(3).

Note 1: The above includes any building with a storey at least 18m above ground level that contains student accommodation, care homes, nursing homes, sheltered housing, hospitals, dormitories in boarding schools and places of lawful detention.

Note 2: The requirement in Regulation 23(2) is limited to materials achieving European classification Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1. Therefore materials achieving limited combustibility cannot be deemed to meet the requirement using an alternative classification method.

Note 3: Products given in the Commission Decision 96/603/EC as amended by 2000/605/EC and 2003/424/EC can be considered to be class A1 without testing. These products may be deemed to meet the requirement.

- 5.4E External walls and specified attachments are defined in Regulation 22 and these definitions include any parts of the external wall as well as balconies, solar panels and sun shading.
- 5.4F Regulation 23(3) provides an exemption for certain components found in external walls and specified attachments.

### Material change of use

- 5.4G Regulation 8 provides that, where the use of a building is changed such that the building becomes a building described in Regulation 23(4), the construction of the external walls, and specified attachments must be investigated and where necessary work must be carried out to ensure they only contain materials achieving European Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1, other than those exempted by Regulation 23(3).

### Further considerations for relevant buildings

- 5.4H The provisions of Regulation 23 apply in addition to the requirements of regulation 36. Therefore for buildings described in Regulation 23(4), the potential impact of any products incorporated into or onto the external walls should be carefully considered with regard to their number, size, orientation and position. Particular attention is drawn to the following points—
- (a) membranes used as part of the external wall construction should

- 
- achieve a minimum classification of European Class B-s3, d0;
- (b) internal linings should comply with the guidance provided in section 3.
  - (c) any part of a roof should achieve the minimum performance as detailed in section 5;
  - (d) as per regulation 23(3), window and door frames and associated glass (including laminated glass) are exempted from regulation 23(2). Window spandrel panels and infill panels must comply with regulation 23(2);
  - (e) thermal breaks are small elements used as part of the external wall construction to restrict thermal bridging. There is no minimum performance for these materials. However, they should not span two compartments and should be limited in size to the minimum required to restrict the thermal bridging (the principal insulation layer is not to be regarded as a thermal break);
  - (f) regulation 23(2) applies to specified attachments. Shop front signs and similar attachments are not covered by the requirements of regulation 23(2), although attention is drawn to paragraph (g); and
  - (g) whilst regulation 23(2) applies to materials which become part of an external wall or specified attachment, consideration should be given to other attachments to the wall which could impact on the risk of fire spread over the wall.

### **Portal frames**

- 5.5 Frequently, the provisions of Section 4 do not require the portal frames of a single storey building to have fire resistance except where the column members of those frames are within, or support, an external wall, which under paragraph 5.2, is required to have fire resistance. Where this occurs both the column and rafter members should have fire resistance, as the moment-resisting connections mean the portal frame acts as a single element. However, in the case of a steel portal frame which has been designed in accordance with the method set out in Fire and steel construction: *Single Storey Steel Framed Buildings in Fire Boundary Conditions*, only those members within or supporting an external wall requiring fire resistance, need have fire resistance.

---

## Space separation – External walls

- 5.6 Protection against the external spread of fire from one building to another is related to –
- (i) the distance between a building and each of its relevant boundaries (see paragraph 5.9); and
  - (ii) the extent of the unprotected area in the side of the building which faces that boundary.

The basic provisions are outlined in paragraph 5.13 and methods of meeting those provisions are given in paragraphs 5.14 to 5.19.

The provisions are based on a number of assumptions, and whilst some of these may differ from the circumstances of a particular case, together they enable a reasonable standard of space separation to be achieved.

The provisions limit the extent of openings and other unprotected areas in the sides of a building (including areas with a combustible surface) which would not give adequate protection against the external spread of fire from one building to another.

The assumptions for establishing space separation are –

- (a) that the fire will involve a complete compartment but will not spread to other compartments;
  - (b) that the intensity of a fire is related to the use of the building and will be moderated by a sprinkler system where it is provided;
  - (c) that a building, which has an identical elevation, is located on the opposite side of, and at the same distance from, the relevant boundary; and
  - (d) that radiation from that part of the external wall, which has the fire resistance required by Section 4, is discounted unless its external surface is combustible as described in paragraph 5.10.
- 5.7 Where a reduced separation distance is desired it may be advantageous to construct compartments of a smaller size.

### Boundaries

- 5.8 The use of the distance to a boundary rather than to another building, in measuring the separation distance, makes it possible to calculate the allowable proportion of unprotected areas, regardless of whether there is a building on an adjoining site, and regardless of the location of that building, and the extent of any unprotected areas that it might have.

Usually only the distance to the actual boundary of the site needs to be considered. But in some circumstances, when the site boundary adjoins a space where further development is unlikely, such as a road, then part of the adjoining space may be included as falling within the relevant boundary for the purposes of this Section.

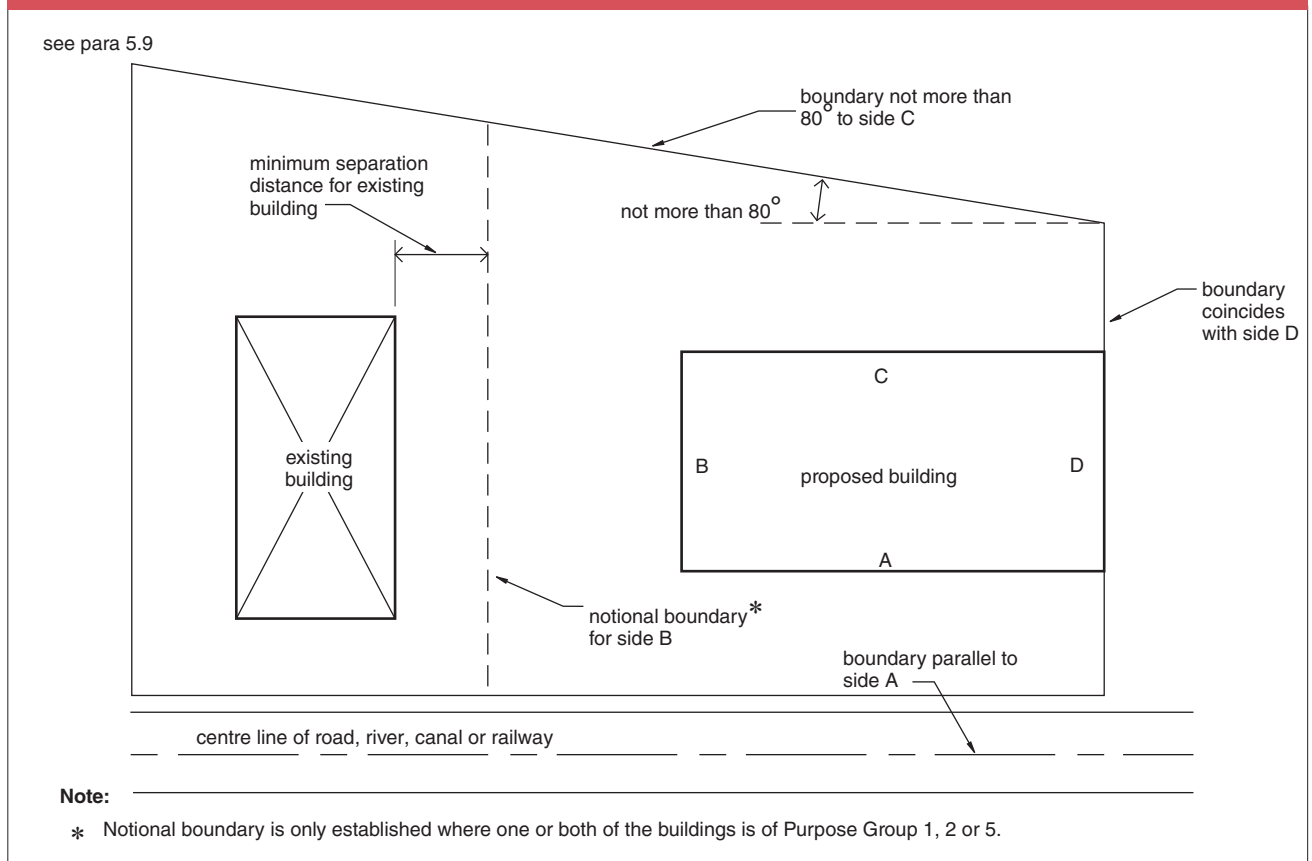
5.9 For a boundary to be a relevant boundary it should coincide with, be parallel to or be at an angle of not more than  $80^\circ$  to the side of the building (see Diagram 5.2).

A relevant boundary may be –

- (a) the actual boundary of the premises on which the building is located;
- (b) the centre line of a road, river, canal or railway which adjoins the actual boundary; or
- (c) a notional boundary established where two or more buildings (one of which is of Purpose Group 1, 2 or 5) are to share the same site. A notional boundary should be assumed so that both buildings comply with the space separation distances required by this Section.

Where a notional boundary is to be established and one of the buildings is an existing building, that building should be treated as if it were a new building.

**Diagram 5.2 Relevant boundaries**



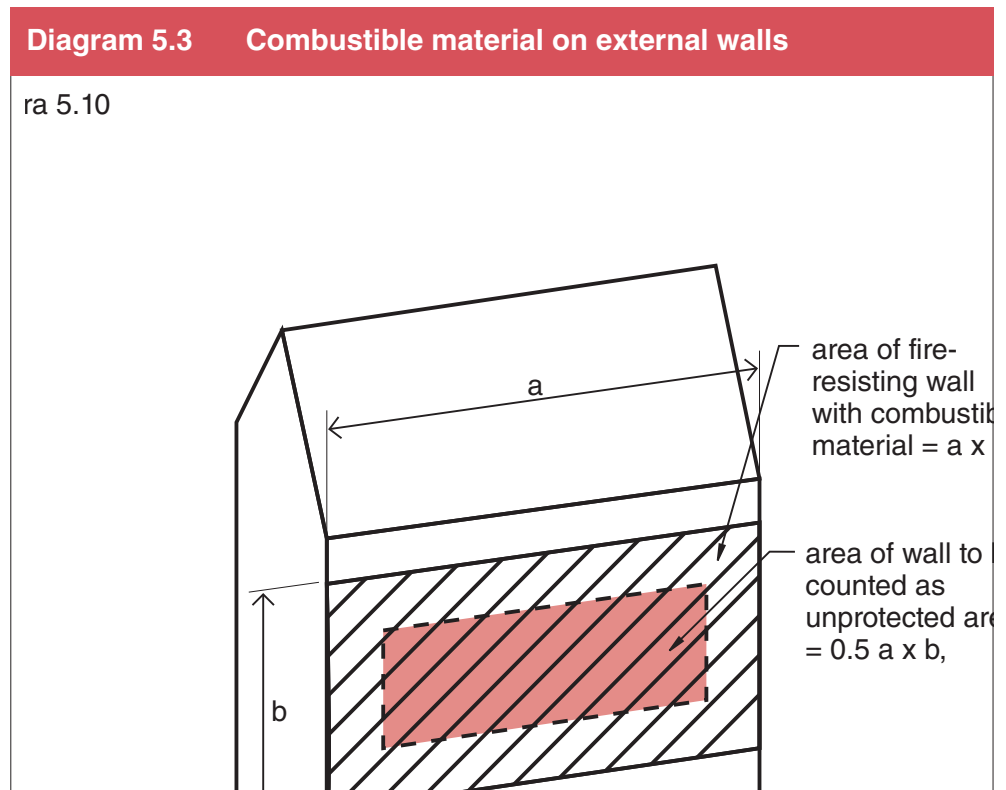
## Unprotected areas in external walls

- 5.10 Any part of an external wall which has less fire resistance than that required by Section 4 should be considered to be an unprotected area.

Where an external wall has the appropriate fire resistance but has a combustible material more than 1 mm thick as its external surface, that wall should be considered to be an unprotected area amounting to half the actual area of the combustible material as shown in Diagram 5.3. However, where such a combustible material has a Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class) classification it need not be considered to be such an unprotected area.

Any part of the external wall of a protected stairway should be discounted when calculating unprotected areas. (However, Section 2 and Section 6 contain provisions relating to the relationship between the external walls of protected stairways and the unprotected areas of other parts of the building.)

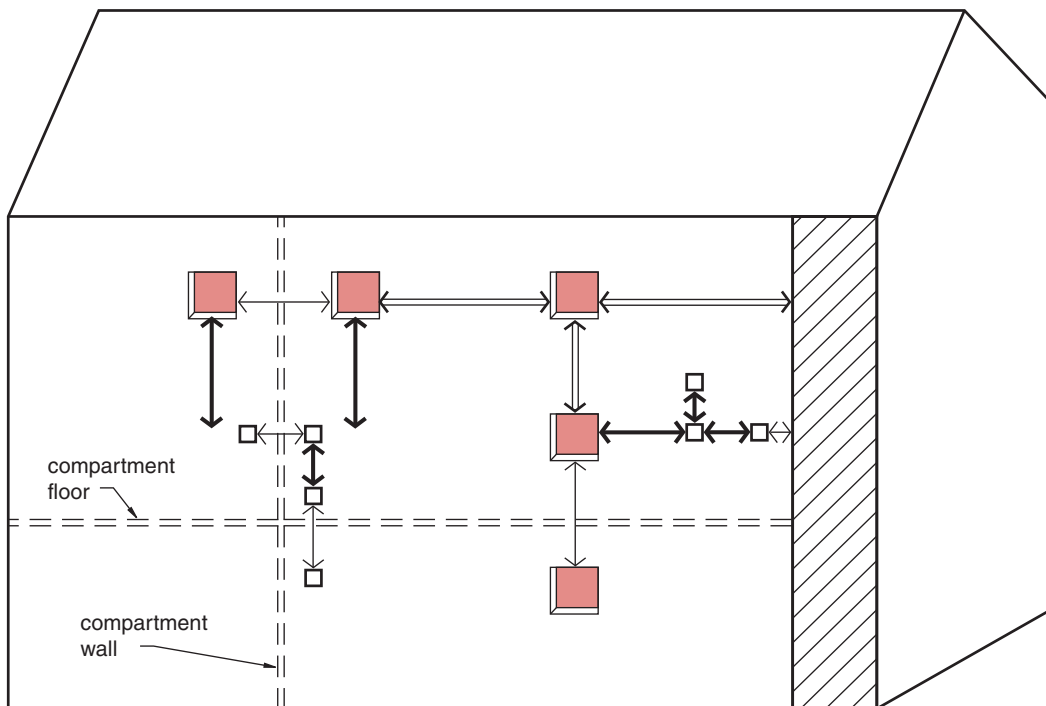
Small unprotected areas may be discounted where they occur in an otherwise protected area of wall, provided that they do not exceed the areas and comply with the minimum spacing shown in Diagram 5.4.



- 5.11 An external wall situated within 1 m of any point on its relevant boundary should have no unprotected areas other than those shown in Diagram 5.4.
- 5.12 An external wall situated 1 m or more from any point on its relevant boundary may have unprotected areas provided that their total area does not exceed that given by the most favourable calculation method given in paragraphs 5.13 to 5.19. Where a building is uncomparted any part of an external wall which is more than 30 m above ground level may be discounted in the calculation.

**Diagram 5.4 Unprotected areas which may be discounted**

see para 5.10, 5.11 and 5.17



**Key**



an unprotected area of not more than 1 m<sup>2</sup> which may consist of two or more smaller areas amounting to not more than 1 m<sup>2</sup> within an area of 1 m x 1 m



an unprotected area of not more than 0.1 m<sup>2</sup>



the external wall of a protected stairway

**Dimensional restrictions**

↔ 4 m minimum distance

→ 1.5 m minimum distance

→ dimension not restricted

## Provisions for and calculation of space separation and unprotected areas

- 5.13 A building should be separated from its relevant boundaries by at least half the distance at which the total thermal radiation intensity received from all unprotected areas in the external walls would be  $12.6 \text{ kW/m}^2$  (in still air) assuming the radiation intensity at each unprotected area is –
- (a)  $84 \text{ kW/m}^2$  where the building is of Purpose Group 1, 2, 3, 5 or 7(b); or
  - (b)  $168 \text{ kW/m}^2$  where the building is of any other purpose group.

Where a building is compartmented each compartment should be calculated separately.

Where a building or compartment is fitted throughout with a sprinkler system complying with the relevant provisions of ~~BS 5306-2~~ or BS EN 12845 for the appropriate occupancy, the thermal radiation intensities in (a) and (b) and the distances calculated using the methods given in paragraphs 5.16 to 5.19 may be halved subject to there being a minimum distance of 1 m. Alternatively, the amount of unprotected area may be doubled if the calculated boundary distance is maintained.

- 5.14 Building Research Establishment Report – *External fire spread: building separation and boundary distances* (BR 187: 1991) gives the method by which the thermal radiation intensity should be calculated for paragraph 5.13. It also gives detailed explanations, with worked examples, of Method 3 (paragraph 5.18) and Method 4 (paragraph 5.19).
- 5.15 Where a building is compartmented and contains an atrium in accordance with paragraph 4.23(d) the recommendations of BS 5588-7: Clause 28.2 may be followed for calculation purposes.

### Method 1 (Small residential buildings)

- 5.16 This method may only be used for buildings in Purpose Groups 1 and 2(b) which do not exceed three storeys in height and are not more than 24 m in length. The maximum total area of unprotected areas in the side of a building should not exceed that given in Table 5.2 for the relevant minimum distance between that side and its boundary.

**Table 5.2 Unprotected areas in small residential buildings (Method 1)**

Minimum distance between side of building and relevant boundary (m)	Maximum total area of unprotected areas ( $\text{m}^2$ )
1	5.6
2	12
3	18
4	24
5	30
6	No limit

## Method 2 (Small buildings and compartments)

- 5.17 This method may be used for buildings and compartments of any purpose group which do not exceed 10 m in height [this height limit does not apply to buildings of Purpose Group 7(b)]. The maximum total percentage of unprotected area in the side of a building should not exceed that given in Table 5.3 for the appropriate purpose group and minimum distance between that side and its relevant boundary. When calculating the unprotected area, any area which complies with paragraph 5.10 and Diagram 5.4 may be discounted.

**Table 5.3 Unprotected areas in small buildings and compartments (Method 2)**

Minimum distance between side of building and relevant boundary (m)		Maximum total percentage of unprotected area (%)
Purpose groups		
1, 2, 3 and 5	4, 6 and 7 *	
N/A	1	4
1	2	8
2.5	5	20
5	10	40
7.5	15	60
10	20	80
12.5	25	100

**Notes:**

\* In the case of a car park in Purpose Group 7(b) the distances given for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3 and 5 may be used.

N/A = not applicable.

Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.



---

### Method 3 (Enclosing rectangle)

- 5.18 This method may be used for buildings and compartments of any purpose group. A building or compartment should be so situated that no point on its relevant boundary is –
- (a) between the relevant plane of reference and the side of the building; and
  - (b) closer to the relevant plane of reference than that given in Table 5.4 for the appropriate purpose group, dimensions of enclosing rectangle and unprotected area percentage.

A plane of reference is a vertical plane which touches the side, or some part of the side, of a building or compartment but which (however, far extended) does not pass within the structure (excluding balconies, copings and similar projections) of that building or compartment. The relevant plane of reference should be chosen to give the least separation distance between it and the relevant boundary. Normally, it is best for the plane of reference to be parallel to the relevant boundary.

The enclosing rectangle is the rectangle, of the least width and height given in Table 5.4, on the relevant plane of reference, which will –

- (i) enclose all the outer edges of the unprotected areas in the external wall of the building or compartment (other than any which is at an angle of 80° or more to the plane of reference). The outer edges should be projected to the plane of reference by lines perpendicular to such plane; and
- (ii) have two horizontal sides.

The total unprotected area is found by adding the areas, as projected on the plane of reference, of all unprotected areas.

The unprotected percentage is calculated from –

$$\frac{\text{unprotected area}}{\text{enclosing rectangle area}} \times 100 = \text{unprotected percentage}$$

The minimum distance from the plane of reference to the relevant boundary is given in Table 5.4, and where the unprotected percentage is between the values given in the Table the distance may be obtained by linear interpolation.

**Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3)**

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
<b>Enclosing rectangle 3 m high</b>									
3	1.0(1.0)	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.0(1.5)	2.5(1.5)	2.5(1.5)	2.5(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)
6	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	3.5(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(3.0)
9	1.5(1.0)	2.5(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.0(3.5)
12	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(3.5)
15	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	6.0(4.0)
18	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	6.5(4.0)
21	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)
24	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
27	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
30	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.0)	8.0(4.5)
40	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)
50	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.0)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(5.0)
60	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	7.5(4.0)	8.5(4.0)	9.5(5.0)
80	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(4.0)	9.5(5.0)
No limit	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(4.0)	10.0(5.0)
<b>Enclosing rectangle 6 m high</b>									
3	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	3.5(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(3.0)
6	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(4.0)	6.0(4.0)
9	2.5(1.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.0(4.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.0(5.0)
12	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.0)	8.5(5.5)
15	3.0(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	9.0(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
18	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)
21	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
24	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	10.0(6.0)	10.5(7.0)	11.0(7.0)
27	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)
30	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.0(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)
40	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(4.5)	10.0(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.0(8.5)
50	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.0(4.5)	10.5(5.5)	11.5(6.5)	13.0(7.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.0(9.0)
60	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.0)	11.0(5.5)	12.0(6.5)	13.5(7.5)	15.0(8.5)	16.0(9.5)
80	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.0)	11.5(6.0)	13.0(7.0)	14.5(7.5)	16.0(8.5)	17.5(9.5)
100	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	13.5(7.0)	15.0(8.0)	16.5(8.5)	18.0(10.0)
120	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	14.0(7.0)	15.5(8.0)	17.0(8.5)	19.0(10.0)
No limit	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	14.0(7.0)	16.0(8.0)	18.0(8.5)	19.0(10.0)

**Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)**

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
<b>Enclosing rectangle 9 m high</b>									
3	1.5(1.0)	2.5(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.0(3.5)
6	2.5(1.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.5(4.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.0(5.0)
9	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.5(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
12	3.5(1.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
15	4.0(2.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)
18	4.5(2.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	12.5(8.5)
21	4.5(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
24	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)
27	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
30	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	9.0(5.0)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)
40	5.5(2.0)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(6.5)	13.0(7.5)	14.5(8.5)	15.5(9.5)	17.0(10.5)	17.5(11.5)
50	5.5(2.0)	8.0(4.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.5(6.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.5(9.0)	17.0(10.0)	18.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)
60	5.5(2.0)	8.0(4.0)	11.0(5.5)	13.0(7.0)	15.0(8.0)	16.5(9.5)	18.0(11.0)	19.5(11.5)	21.0(13.0)
80	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	13.5(7.0)	16.0(8.5)	17.5(10.0)	19.5(11.5)	21.5(12.5)	23.0(13.5)
100	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	14.5(7.0)	16.5(8.5)	18.5(10.0)	21.0(11.5)	22.5(12.5)	24.5(14.5)
120	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	14.5(7.0)	17.0(8.5)	19.5(10.0)	21.5(11.5)	23.5(12.5)	26.0(14.5)
No Limit	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	15.0(7.0)	17.5(8.5)	20.0(10.5)	22.5(12.0)	24.5(12.5)	27.0(15.0)
<b>Enclosing rectangle 12 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(3.5)
6	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.0)	8.5(5.5)
9	3.5(1.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
12	4.5(1.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)	12.0(8.0)
15	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
18	5.0(2.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	14.5(10.0)
21	5.5(2.5)	7.5(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(10.0)	16.0(10.5)
24	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.5)
27	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
30	6.5(2.5)	8.5(4.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.5(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	18.5(12.5)
40	6.5(2.5)	9.5(5.0)	12.0(6.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.5(9.5)	17.5(10.5)	18.5(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)
50	7.0(2.5)	10.0(5.0)	13.0(7.0)	15.0(8.5)	17.0(10.0)	19.0(11.0)	20.5(13.0)	23.0(14.0)	23.0(15.0)
60	7.0(2.5)	10.5(5.0)	13.5(7.0)	16.0(9.0)	18.0(10.5)	20.0(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.5(14.5)	25.0(16.0)
80	7.0(2.5)	11.0(5.0)	14.5(7.0)	17.0(9.0)	19.5(11.0)	21.5(13.0)	23.5(14.5)	26.0(16.0)	27.5(17.0)
100	7.5(2.5)	11.5(5.0)	15.0(7.5)	18.0(9.5)	21.0(11.5)	23.0(13.5)	25.5(15.0)	28.0(16.5)	30.0(18.0)
120	7.5(2.5)	11.5(5.0)	15.0(7.5)	18.5(9.5)	22.0(11.5)	24.0(13.5)	27.0(15.0)	29.5(17.0)	31.5(18.5)
No limit	7.5(2.5)	12.0(5.0)	15.5(7.5)	19.0(9.5)	22.5(12.0)	25.0(14.0)	28.0(15.5)	30.5(17.0)	34.0(19.0)

**Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)**

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
<b>Enclosing rectangle 15 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	6.0(4.0)
6	3.0(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	9.0(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
9	4.0(2.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)
12	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
15	5.5(2.0)	7.0(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
18	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.5(10.5)	16.5(11.0)
21	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
24	6.5(3.0)	9.0(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.0(12.0)	19.0(13.0)
27	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.5(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(12.5)	20.0(13.5)
30	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	20.0(13.5)	21.0(14.0)
40	8.0(3.0)	11.0(6.0)	13.5(8.0)	16.0(9.5)	18.0(11.0)	19.5(12.5)	21.0(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
50	8.5(3.5)	12.0(6.0)	15.0(8.5)	17.5(10.0)	19.5(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.0(16.5)	26.0(17.5)
60	8.5(3.5)	12.5(6.5)	15.5(8.5)	18.0(10.5)	21.0(12.5)	23.5(14.0)	25.0(15.5)	27.0(17.0)	28.0(18.0)
80	9.0(3.5)	13.5(6.5)	17.0(9.0)	20.0(11.0)	23.0(13.5)	25.5(15.0)	28.0(17.0)	30.0(18.5)	31.5(20.0)
100	9.0(3.5)	14.0(6.5)	18.0(9.0)	21.5(11.5)	24.5(14.0)	27.5(16.0)	30.0(18.0)	32.5(19.5)	34.5(21.5)
120	9.0(3.5)	14.0(6.5)	18.5(9.0)	22.5(11.5)	25.5(14.0)	28.5(16.5)	31.5(18.5)	34.5(20.5)	37.0(22.5)
No limit	9.0(3.5)	14.5(6.5)	19.0(9.0)	23.0(12.0)	27.0(14.5)	30.0(17.0)	34.0(19.0)	36.0(21.0)	39.0(23.0)
<b>Enclosing rectangle 18 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	6.5(4.0)
6	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)
9	4.5(2.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	12.5(8.5)
12	5.0(2.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	14.5(10.0)
15	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.5(10.5)	16.5(11.0)
18	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(11.0)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(13.0)
21	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(12.5)	19.5(13.0)
24	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.5(10.0)	16.5(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	19.5(13.0)	20.5(14.0)
27	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)
30	8.0(3.5)	11.0(6.5)	13.5(8.0)	15.5(9.5)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)	22.5(15.5)
40	9.0(4.0)	12.0(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.5(11.0)	19.5(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.5(15.0)	25.0(16.5)	26.0(17.5)
50	9.5(4.0)	13.0(7.0)	16.5(9.5)	19.0(11.5)	21.5(13.0)	23.5(15.0)	26.0(16.5)	27.5(18.0)	29.0(19.0)
60	10.0(4.0)	14.0(7.5)	17.5(10.0)	20.5(12.0)	23.0(14.0)	26.0(16.0)	27.5(17.5)	29.5(19.5)	31.0(20.5)
80	10.0(4.0)	15.0(7.5)	19.0(10.0)	22.5(13.0)	26.0(15.0)	28.5(17.0)	31.0(19.0)	33.5(21.0)	35.0(22.5)
100	10.0(4.0)	16.0(7.5)	20.5(10.0)	24.0(13.5)	28.0(16.0)	31.0(18.0)	33.5(20.5)	36.0(22.5)	38.5(24.0)
120	10.0(4.0)	16.5(7.5)	21.0(10.0)	25.5(14.0)	29.5(16.5)	32.5(19.0)	35.5(21.0)	39.0(23.5)	41.5(25.5)
No limit	10.0(4.0)	17.0(8.0)	22.0(10.0)	26.5(14.0)	30.5(17.0)	34.0(19.5)	37.0(22.0)	41.0(24.0)	43.5(26.5)

**Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)**

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
<b>Enclosing rectangle 21 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
9	4.5(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
12	5.5(2.5)	7.5(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(10.0)	16.0(10.5)
15	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
18	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(12.5)	19.5(13.0)
21	7.5(3.0)	10.0(6.0)	12.5(7.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.5)	20.0(13.5)	21.0(14.0)
24	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	13.0(8.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.0(15.0)
27	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
30	9.0(4.0)	12.0(7.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	18.5(12.0)	20.5(13.0)	22.0(14.5)	23.5(16.0)	25.0(16.5)
40	10.0(4.5)	13.5(7.5)	16.5(10.0)	19.0(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.5(16.5)	27.0(18.0)	28.5(19.0)
50	11.0(4.5)	14.5(8.0)	18.0(11.0)	21.0(13.0)	23.5(14.5)	25.5(16.5)	28.0(18.0)	30.0(20.0)	31.5(21.0)
60	11.5(4.5)	15.5(8.5)	19.5(11.5)	22.5(13.5)	25.5(15.5)	28.0(17.5)	30.5(19.5)	32.5(21.0)	33.5(22.5)
80	12.0(4.5)	17.0(8.5)	21.0(12.0)	25.0(14.5)	28.5(17.0)	31.5(19.0)	34.0(21.0)	36.5(23.5)	38.5(25.0)
100	12.0(4.5)	18.0(9.0)	22.5(12.0)	27.0(15.5)	31.0(18.0)	34.5(20.5)	37.0(22.5)	40.0(25.0)	42.0(27.0)
120	12.0(4.5)	18.5(9.0)	23.5(12.0)	28.5(16.0)	32.5(18.5)	36.5(21.5)	39.5(23.5)	43.0(26.5)	45.5(28.5)
No limit	12.0(4.5)	19.0(9.0)	25.0(12.0)	29.5(16.0)	34.5(19.0)	38.0(22.0)	41.5(25.0)	45.5(26.5)	48.0(29.5)
<b>Enclosing rectangle 24 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	10.0(6.0)	10.5(7.0)	11.0(7.0)
9	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)
12	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.5)
15	6.5(3.0)	9.0(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.0(12.0)	19.0(13.0)
18	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.5(10.0)	16.5(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	19.5(13.0)	20.5(14.0)
21	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	13.0(8.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.0(15.0)
24	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)
27	9.0(4.0)	12.5(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.0(11.0)	19.0(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)
30	9.5(4.0)	13.0(7.5)	15.5(9.5)	18.0(11.5)	20.0(13.0)	21.5(14.0)	23.5(15.5)	25.0(17.0)	26.5(18.0)
40	11.0(4.5)	14.5(8.5)	18.0(11.0)	20.5(13.0)	23.0(14.5)	25.0(16.0)	27.5(18.0)	29.0(19.0)	30.5(20.5)
50	12.0(5.0)	16.0(9.0)	19.5(12.0)	22.5(14.0)	25.5(16.0)	27.5(17.5)	30.0(19.5)	32.0(21.0)	33.5(22.5)
60	12.5(5.0)	17.0(9.5)	21.0(12.5)	24.5(15.0)	27.5(17.0)	30.0(19.0)	32.5(21.0)	35.0(23.0)	36.5(24.5)
80	13.5(5.0)	18.5(10.0)	23.5(13.5)	27.5(16.5)	31.0(18.5)	34.5(21.0)	37.0(23.5)	39.5(25.5)	41.5(27.5)
100	13.5(5.0)	20.0(10.0)	25.0(13.5)	29.5(17.0)	33.5(20.0)	37.0(22.5)	40.0(25.0)	43.0(27.5)	45.5(29.5)
120	13.5(5.5)	20.5(10.0)	26.5(13.5)	31.0(17.5)	36.0(20.5)	39.5(23.5)	43.0(26.5)	46.5(29.0)	49.0(31.0)
No limit	13.5(5.5)	21.0(10.0)	27.5(13.5)	32.5(18.0)	37.5(21.0)	42.0(24.0)	45.5(27.5)	49.5(30.0)	52.0(32.5)

**Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)**

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
<b>Enclosing rectangle 27 m high</b>									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)
9	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
12	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
15	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.5(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(12.5)	20.0(13.5)
18	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)
21	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
24	9.0(3.5)	12.5(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.0(11.0)	19.0(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)
27	10.0(4.0)	13.0(7.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	20.0(13.0)	22.0(14.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)	27.0(18.0)
30	10.0(4.0)	13.5(8.0)	17.0(10.0)	19.0(12.0)	21.0(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.0(17.0)	26.5(18.0)	28.0(19.0)
40	11.5(5.0)	15.5(9.0)	19.0(11.5)	22.0(14.0)	24.5(15.5)	26.5(17.5)	29.0(19.0)	30.5(20.5)	32.5(22.0)
50	12.5(5.5)	17.0(9.5)	21.0(12.5)	24.0(15.0)	27.0(17.0)	29.5(19.0)	32.0(21.0)	34.5(22.5)	36.0(24.0)
60	13.5(5.5)	18.5(10.5)	22.5(13.5)	26.5(16.0)	29.5(18.5)	32.0(20.5)	35.0(22.5)	37.0(24.5)	39.0(26.5)
80	14.5(6.0)	20.5(11.0)	25.0(14.5)	29.5(17.5)	33.0(20.5)	36.5(22.5)	39.5(25.0)	42.0(27.5)	44.0(29.5)
100	15.5(6.0)	21.5(11.0)	27.0(15.5)	32.0(19.0)	36.5(21.5)	40.5(24.5)	43.0(27.0)	46.5(30.0)	48.5(32.0)
120	15.5(6.0)	22.5(11.5)	28.5(15.5)	34.0(19.5)	39.0(22.5)	43.0(26.0)	46.5(28.5)	50.5(32.0)	53.0(34.0)
No limit	15.5(6.0)	23.5(11.5)	29.5(15.5)	35.0(20.0)	40.5(23.5)	44.5(27.0)	48.5(29.5)	52.0(33.0)	55.5(35.0)

## Method 4 (Aggregate notional area)

5.19 This method can be used for a building or compartment of any purpose group. A building or compartment should be so situated that the aggregate notional area of the unprotected areas in the side of the building or compartment does not exceed, in the case of –

- (a) a building or compartment of Purpose Group 1, 2, 3, 5 or 7(b) – 210 m<sup>2</sup>; or
- (b) a building or compartment of any other purpose group – 90 m<sup>2</sup>,

when calculated from any vertical datum on its relevant boundary.

The aggregate notional area is the aggregate of the areas of unprotected area in the side of the building or compartment, each such unprotected area being multiplied by the Factor given in Table 5.5 relative to the distance the unprotected area is from the vertical datum.

A vertical datum is a vertical line of unlimited height at any point on the relevant boundary and the datum line is the line joining the vertical datum to the nearest point on the side of the building or compartment.

When calculating the aggregate notional area no account should be taken of any unprotected area which is –

- (i) screened from the vertical datum by any part of an external wall which is not an unprotected area;
- (ii) outside a horizontal area centred on the vertical datum, having a radius of 50 m and extending 90° on either side of the datum line;
- (iii) facing away from the vertical datum; or
- (iv) making an angle of less than 10° with a line drawn from it to the vertical datum.

**Table 5.5 Multiplication factors for determining aggregate notional areas (Method 4)**

Distance of unprotected area from vertical datum (m)		Factor
Not less than	Less than	
1.0	1.2	80
1.2	1.8	40
1.8	2.7	20
2.7	4.3	10
4.3	6.0	4
6.0	8.5	2
8.5	12.0	1
12.0	18.5	0.5
18.5	27.5	0.25
27.5	50.0	0.1
50.0	No limit	0

## Canopies

5.20 The high degree of ventilation and heat dissipation achieved by open sided canopies means that the space separation required by paragraph 5.13 may be onerous.

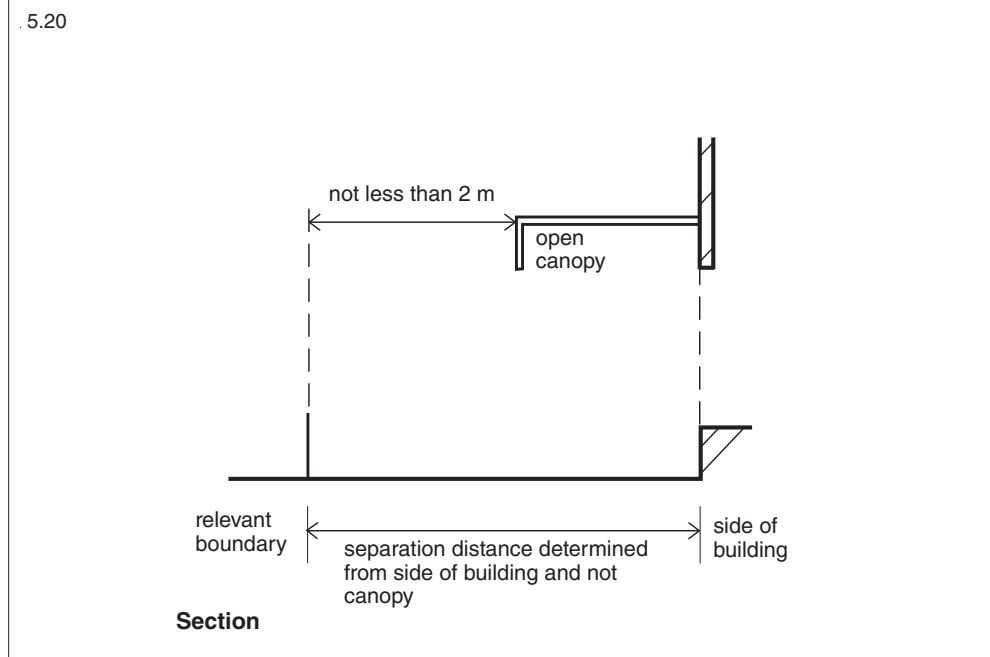
The provisions of paragraph 5.13 should not apply to –

- (a) a free standing single storey, open sided canopy, constructed of non-combustible materials, which is not less than 1 m from its relevant boundaries; and
- (b) a covered way, covered yard or a carport, which is open on two or more sides and is not more than 40 m<sup>2</sup> in area.

When determining the separation distance an attached single storey canopy which is not less than 2 m from its relevant boundaries and open on all sides other than the attached side may be discounted (see Diagram 5.5).

The provisions regarding roof coverings and roof separation distances should apply (see paragraph 5.21 to 5.26).

**Diagram 5.5** The effect of an attached canopy on separation distance





---

## Roofs

### Roof covering designations (National tests)

- 5.21 The designation of a roof covering in respect of external fire exposure should be determined by testing in accordance with BS 476: Part 3 and expressed by two letters in the range A to D with an AA classification being the best. The first letter indicates the time to penetration and the second letter indicates a measure of the spread of flame. The notional designations of some generic roof coverings are given in Table 5.6.

Note – The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

### Roof covering designations (European tests)

- 5.22 Performance in terms of the resistance of roofs to external fire exposure is determined by reference to Commission Decision 2005/823/EC amending Decision 2001/671/EC establishing a classification system for the external fire performance of roofs and roof coverings.

Constructions are classified within the European system as  $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ ,  $C_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ ,  $D_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ ,  $E_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  or  $F_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  in accordance with BS EN 13501-5: Fire classification of construction products and building elements: Classification using data from external fire exposure to roof tests. With  $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  being the highest performance and  $F_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  being the lowest.

BS EN 13501-5 refers to four separate tests. The suffix (t4) used above indicates that test4 is to be used for the purposes of this Technical Booklet.

- 5.23 Where a thermoplastic material cannot be given a designation when tested to BS 476: Part 3 it may be used as a rooflight provided that it can be classified under paragraph 3.5 and is used in accordance with paragraph 5.25. Where unwired glass, not less than 4 mm thick, is used in a rooflight it should be regarded as having an AA (National class) or  $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$  (European class) designation.

### Space separation - roofs

**Table 5.6 Notional designations of roof coverings**

<b>Part I – Pitched roofs covered with slates or tiles</b>				
<b>Covering material</b>		<b>Supporting structure</b>		<b>Designation</b>
1	Natural slates	Timber rafters with or without underfelt, sarking, boarding, wood wool slabs, compressed straw slabs, plywood, wood chipboard or fibre insulating board		AA (National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)
2	Fibre reinforced cement sheets			
3	Clay tiles			
4	Concrete tiles			
<p>Notes: Although this Table does not include guidance on pitched roofs covered with bitumen felt, it should be noted that there is a wide range of materials on the market and information on specific products is readily available from manufacturers.</p> <p>—</p>				
<b>Part II – Pitched roofs covered with self-supporting sheets</b>				
<b>Details of covering</b>		<b>Supporting structure</b>		<b>Designation</b>
<b>Material</b>	<b>Construction</b>			
1	Profiled sheets of – (i) galvanised steel; (ii) aluminium; (iii) fibre reinforced cement; or (iv) prepainted (coil coated) steel or aluminium with a PVC or PVF <sub>2</sub> coating	Single skin without underlay or with underlay of – (i) plasterboard; (ii) fibre insulating board; or (iii) wood wool slab	Structure of timber, steel or concrete	AA (National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)
2	Profiled sheets of – (i) galvanised steel; (ii) aluminium; (iii) fibre reinforced cement; or (iv) prepainted (coil coated) steel or aluminium with a PVC or PVF <sub>2</sub> coating	Double skin without interlayer or with interlayer of – (i) resin-bonded glass fibre; (ii) mineral wool slab; (iii) polystyrene; or (iv) polyurethane	Structure of timber, steel or concrete	AA (National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)

**Table 5.6 Notional designations of roof coverings (contd)**

**Part III – Pitched or flat roofs covered with fully supported material**

Details of covering			Designation
Covering material	Supporting structure		
1 Aluminium sheet	Timber joists and –		AA*(National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)
2 Copper sheet	(i) tongued and grooved boarding; or		
3 Zinc sheet	(ii) plain edged boarding		
4 Lead sheet			
5 Mastic asphalt			AA (National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)
6 Vitreous enamelled steel sheet	Steel or timber joists with deck of–		
7 Lead/tin alloy coated steel sheet	(i) wood wool slab;		
	(ii) compressed straw slab;		
	(iii) wood chipboard;		
	(iv) fibre insulating board; or		
8 Zinc/aluminium alloy coated steel sheet	(v) 9.5 mm plywood		
9 Pre-painted (coil coated) steel sheet including liquid-applied PVC coatings	Concrete or clay pot slab (cast in situ or precast), or non-combustible deck of steel, aluminium or fibre reinforced cement (with or without insulation)		AA (National class) or B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)

**Note:**

\* Lead sheet supported by timber joists and plain edge boarding should be deemed to be of designation BA (National class) or C<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class).

**Part IV – Flat roofs covered with bitumen felt**

A flat roof comprising a covering of bitumen felt should (irrespective of the felt specification) be deemed to be of designation AA (National class) or B<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class) if the felt is laid on a deck constructed of 6 mm plywood, 12.5 mm wood chipboard, 16 mm (finished) plain edged timber boarding, compressed straw slab, screeded wood wool slab, profiled fibre reinforced cement or steel deck (single or double skin) with or without fibre insulating board overlay, or concrete or clay pot slab (insitu or pre cast) and has a surface finish of –

- (a) bitumen bedded stone chippings covering the whole surface to a depth of not less than 12.5 mm;
- (b) bitumen bedded tiles of a non-combustible material;
- (c) sand and cement screed; or
- (d) macadam.

5.24 The minimum distance from any part of a roof, other than a plastic rooflight, to a relevant boundary (see paragraph 5.9) should be not less than that given in Table 5.7 for the relevant designation of roof covering. There are no restrictions on the use of roof coverings designated AA, AB or AC (National class) or B<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class). In addition, roof covering products (and/or materials) as defined in Commission Decision 2000/553/EC implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the external fire performance of roof coverings can be considered to fulfil all of the requirements for performance characteristic “external fire performance” without the need for testing provided that any national provisions on the design and execution of works are fulfilled. That is, the roof covering products (and/or materials) defined in this Commission Decision can be used without restriction.

The boundary formed by the compartment wall separating semi-detached dwellinghouses should be disregarded for the purposes of this paragraph.

**Table 5.7 Limitations on roof coverings**

Designation of covering of roof or part of roof		Minimum distance from any point on relevant boundary			
		Less than 6 m	Not less than 6 m	Not less than 12 m	Not less than 20 m
National Class	European Class				
AA, AB or AC	B <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4)	✓	✓	✓	✓
BA, BB or BC	C <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4)	X	✓	✓	✓
CA, CB or CC	D <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4)	X	✓(1)(2)	✓(1)	✓
AD, BD or CD	E <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4)	X	✓(1)(2)	✓(1)	✓(1)
DA, DB, DC or DD	F <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4)	X	X	X	✓(1)(2)

Notes:

✓ Acceptable.

X Not acceptable.

(1) Not acceptable on any of the following buildings –

- (i) a dwellinghouse in a terrace of three or more dwellinghouses;
- (ii) a building of Purpose Group 6 or 7 of any size; and
- (iii) a building of any other purpose group with a cubic capacity greater than 1500 m<sup>3</sup>.

(2) Acceptable on buildings not listed in Note 1 but only where that part of the roof is –

- (i) not more than 3 m<sup>2</sup> in area;
- (ii) not less than 1.5 m from any similar part; and
- (iii) the roof covering between any such parts is a material of limited combustibility.

- 5.25 Where a roof incorporates a plastic rooflight, which is not designated AA, AB, AC, BA, BB or BC (National class), or B<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) or C<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class), the minimum distance from that rooflight to a relevant boundary should be not less than that given in Tables 5.8 and 5.9 for the appropriate classification of the rooflight and the space over which it is located.

For the purposes of this paragraph and Tables 5.8 and 5.9 a rigid thermoplastic rooflight, made from polycarbonate or unplasticised PVC, which achieves a Class 1 classification for surface spread of flame (see paragraph 3.4) may be regarded as having an AA (National class) or B<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class) designation (other than for the purposes of paragraph 4.21(a) and Diagram 4.2).

- 5.26 Thatch or wood shingles should be regarded as having an AD, BD or CD (National class) or E<sub>ROOF</sub>(t4) (European class) designation in Table 5.7 where performance under BS 476: Part 3 or ENV 1187, test4 cannot be established.

**Table 5.8 Plastic rooflights – Limitations on use and boundary distance**

Minimum classification on lower surface <sup>(1)</sup>	Space which rooflight can serve	Minimum distance (m) from any point on relevant boundary to rooflight with an external surface classification of	
		AD, BD,CD (National class) or E <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class) CA, CB, CC, (National class) or D <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)	DA, DB, DC, DD (National class) or F <sub>ROOF</sub> (t4) (European class)
Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class)	(a) Balcony, verandah, carport, covered way or loading bay which has at least one longer side wholly or permanently open	6	20
	(b) Detached swimming pool (c) Conservatory, garage or outbuilding, with a maximum floor area of 40 m <sup>2</sup>		
	(d) Circulation space <sup>(3)</sup> (except a protected stairway)	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	20 <sup>(2)</sup>
	(e) Room <sup>(3)</sup>		

Notes:

(1) As required by paragraph 3.14.

(2) The rooflight should also comply with Diagram 5.6.

(3) Single skin rooflight only, in the case of non-thermoplastic materials.

Rooflights may have upper and lower surfaces with different properties if they have double skins or are laminates of different materials – in which case the more onerous distance applies.

Where paragraph 4.21(a) applies rooflights should be at least 1.5 m from the compartment wall.

**Table 5.9 TP(a) and TP(b) plastic rooflights – Limitations on use and boundary distance**

Minimum classification on lower surface <sup>(1)</sup>	Space which rooflight can serve	Minimum distance (m) from any point on relevant boundary to rooflight with an external surface classification of	
		TP(a)	TP(b)
1 TP(a) rigid	Any space except a protected stairway	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	Not applicable
2 TP(b)	(a) Balcony, verandah, carport, covered way or loading bay which has at least one longer side wholly or permanently open (b) Detached swimming pool (c) Conservatory, garage or outbuilding, with a maximum floor area of 40 m <sup>2</sup>	Not applicable	6
	(d) Circulation space <sup>(4)</sup> (except a protected stairway) (e) Room <sup>(4)</sup>	Not applicable	6 <sup>(3)</sup>

Notes:

(1) As required by paragraph 3.14.

(2) No limit in the case of any space described in items 2(a), (b) and (c).

(3) The rooflight should also comply with Diagram 5.6.

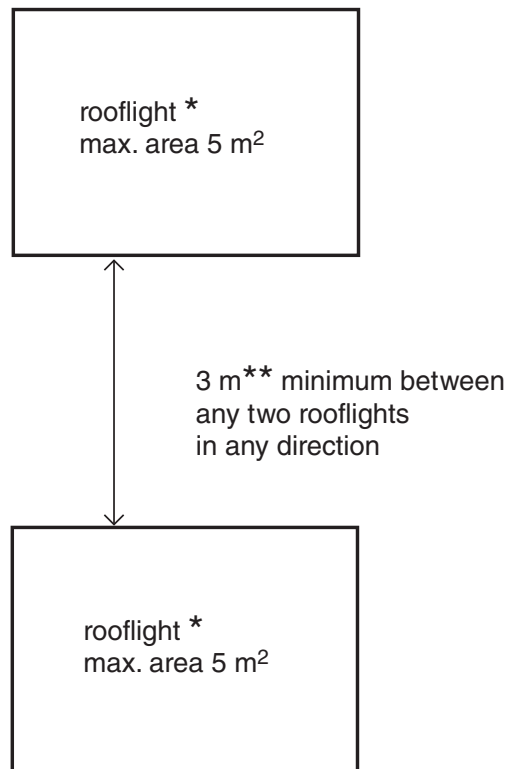
(4) Single skin rooflight only, in the case of non-thermoplastic materials.

Rooflights may have upper and lower surfaces with different properties if they have double skins or are laminates of different materials – in which case the more onerous distance applies.

Where paragraph 4.21(a) applies rooflights should be at least 1.5 m from the compartment wall.

## Diagram 5.6 Limitation on areas and spacing of certain thermoplastic rooflights

note (2), Table 5.9 note (3)



### Notes:

- \* Or group of rooflights amounting to not more than 5 m<sup>2</sup>.
- \*\* Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class) rooflights to rooms in non-residential purpose groups may be spaced 1.8 m apart

- 6.1 This Section contains provisions to ensure that there is –
- (a) sufficient means of access to and within a building for firefighting personnel to effect rescue and fight fire;
  - (b) sufficient facilities to assist firefighters in their tasks;
  - (c) adequate means of venting smoke from a fire in a basement; and
  - (d) adequate external access to enable firefighting appliances to be brought near to a building for effective use.
- 6.1A The main factor determining the facilities needed to assist the Fire and Rescue Service is the size of the building. Generally, most firefighting is carried out within the building.
- 6.1B If it is proposed to deviate from the guidance in Section 6, then it would be advisable to seek advice from the Fire and Rescue Service at the earliest opportunity.

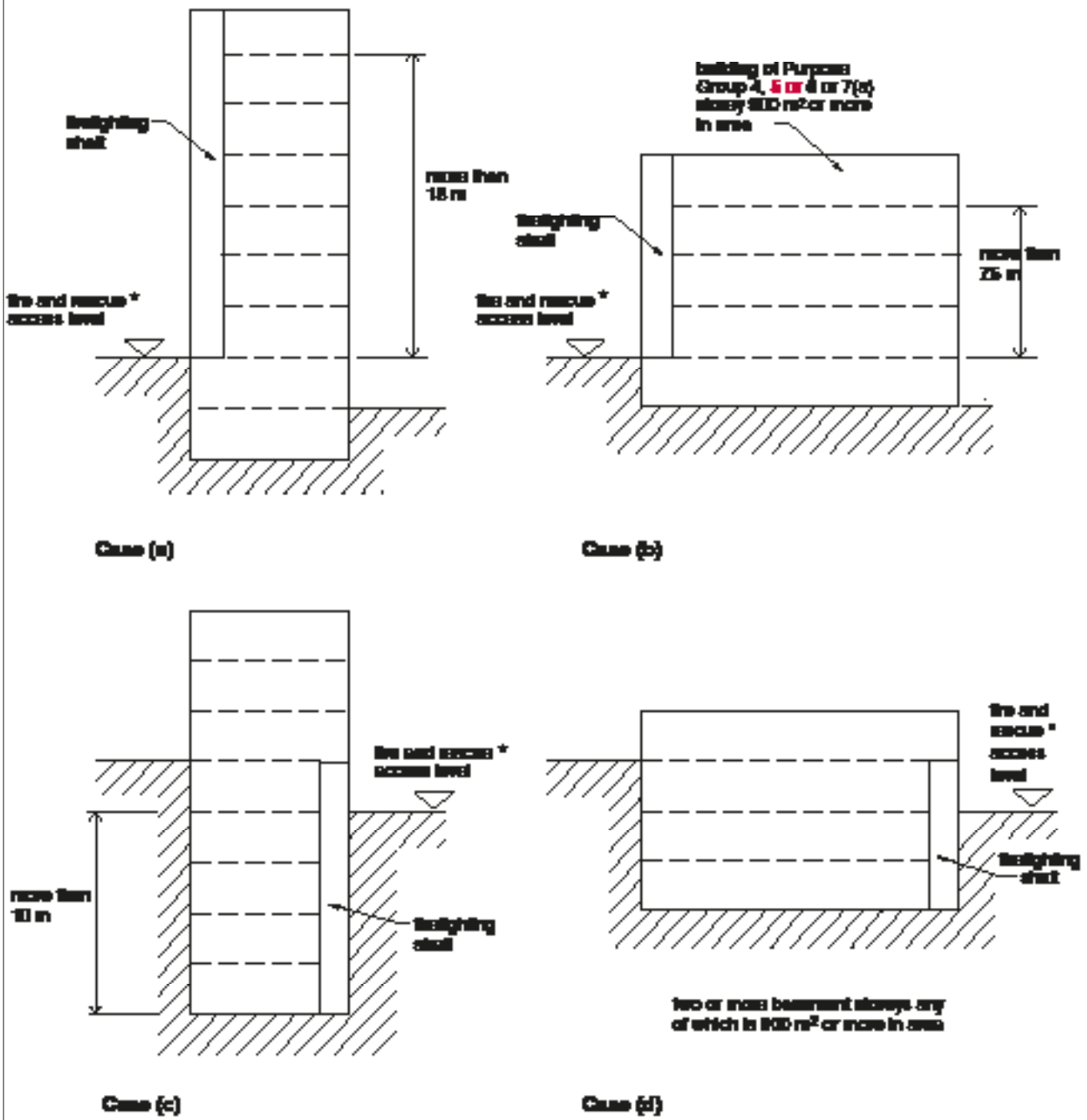
### Firefighting shafts

- 6.2 In low rise buildings without deep basements fire and rescue personnel access requirements will be met by a combination of the normal means of escape in the building and the measures for vehicle access in accordance with paragraphs 6.19 and 6.20. In other buildings including high rise buildings and those with deep basements the problems of reaching the fire and working inside the building near the fire, necessitate the provision of additional facilities to avoid delay and to provide a sufficiently secure operating base to allow effective action to be taken. These additional facilities include firefighting lifts, firefighting stairs and firefighting lobbies which are combined in a protected shaft known as a firefighting shaft.
- 6.3 A shopping complex should be provided with firefighting shafts in accordance with the recommendations of ~~BS 5588-10 Section 3~~ **BS 9999**. Any other building should be provided with a firefighting shaft or shafts, to serve all storeys, where –
- (a) it has a storey more than 18 m above fire and rescue access level;
  - (b) it is a building of Purpose Group 4, 5, 6 or 7(a) and has a storey 900 m<sup>2</sup> or more in area at a height of 7.5 m or more above fire and rescue access level;
  - (c) it has a storey more than 10 m below fire and rescue access level; or
  - (d) it has two or more basement storeys any of which is 900 m<sup>2</sup> or more in area.



**Diagram 6.1 Provision of firefighting shafts**

see para 6.2



**Notes:**

\* When measuring the height to an upper storey the highest level at which the Fire and Rescue Service can gain access should be used and similarly when measuring the depth of a basement storey the lowest level should be used.

1. In cases (a) and (c) the firefighting shaft should include a firefighting lift.

However, a firefighting shaft provided under (a) or (b) need not serve a basement storey unless (c) or (d) applies and similarly a firefighting shaft provided under (c) or (d) need not serve an upper storey unless (a) or (b) applies.

Diagram 6.1 illustrates the provisions of this paragraph.

- 6.3A Firefighting shafts and protected stairways should be located such that every part of each storey more than 18m above fire and rescue service vehicle access level (or above 7.5m where covered by paragraph 6.3) complies with the maximum distances given in paragraph 6.3B.
- 6.3B In any building, the hose laying distance should meet all of the following conditions—
  - (a) a maximum of 60m from the fire main outlet in a firefighting shaft on a route suitable for laying a fire hose (hose route). If the internal layout is not known every part of every such storey should be not more than 40m in a direct line from a fire main outlet;
  - (b) Additionally, where sprinklers have not been provided in accordance with Section 8, the hose laying distance should be a maximum of 45m from a fire main outlet in a protected shaft or 30 m in a direct line (although this does not imply that the protected shaft needs to be designed as a firefighting shaft).
- 6.3C A minimum of two firefighting shafts (each containing a firefighting lift) should be provided to buildings with a storey that has a floor area of 900m<sup>2</sup> or more and a floor level 18m or more above fire and rescue service access level.
- 6.3D A minimum of two firefighting shafts (which do not need to include a firefighting lift) should be provided to buildings where 6.3(b) applies.

**Table 6.1 — Minimum number of firefighting shafts in a building fitted with a sprinkler system**

Floor area of the largest storey (m <sup>2</sup> )	Minimum number of firefighting shafts
Less than 900	1
900 to 2000	2
Over 2000	2 plus 1 for every 1500 m <sup>2</sup> or part thereof of floor area

- 
- 6.4 — Where a building is to be provided with firefighting shafts the minimum number (subject to paragraph 6.5) should be —
- (a) where a building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 as given in Table 6.1 for the appropriate floor area; or
  - (b) where a building is not fitted throughout with such a sprinkler system — at least one for every 900 m<sup>2</sup>, (or part thereof) of floor area of the largest storey given in paragraph 6.3(a) to (d) as appropriate.

- 6.5 — Firefighting shafts should be located so that every part of every storey (other than fire and rescue access level) is not more than 60 m from a fire main outlet, measured on a route suitable for laying a fire hose (hose route). Where the internal layout is unknown every part of every such storey should be not more than 40 m, in a direct line, from a fire main outlet.

- 6.6 Firefighting shafts should be designed and constructed in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-5 BS 9999. Where a building falls within paragraph 6.3(a) or (c) all firefighting shafts should have a firefighting lift complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-5 BS 9999. A firefighting lift installation includes the lift car itself, the lift well and the lift machinery space, together with the lift communication system. The firefighting lift installation should conform with BS EN 81-1 or BS EN 81-2 as appropriate for the particular type of lift and BS EN 81-72.

However, in a Purpose Group 1(a) (flat) building it is not necessary for a firefighting shaft to have firefighting lobbies provided that —

- (a) the firefighting stair opens directly into a protected lobby or protected corridor provided for means of escape; and
- (b) where the firefighting shaft has a firefighting lift — the lift opens directly into a protected lobby or protected corridor provided for means of escape and the lift landing doors are not more than 7.5 m from the door to the firefighting stair.

### Fire mains

- 6.7 Fire mains are installed in a building and equipped with valves, etc., so that the Fire and Rescue Service may connect hoses for water to fight fires inside the building. Rising fire mains serve floors above ground, or upwards from the level at which the Fire and Rescue Service gain access (called the fire and rescue access level) if this is not ground level. Falling mains serve levels below fire and rescue access level.

Fire mains may be of the dry type which are normally empty and are supplied through hose from a fire and rescue pumping appliance. Alternatively, they may be of the wet type where they are kept full of water and supplied from tanks and pumps in the building. There should be a facility to allow a wet system to be replenished from a pumping appliance in an emergency.

- 
- 6.8 A firefighting shaft should be provided with –
- (a) a wet fire main where it has a storey more than 60 50 m above fire and rescue access level; or
  - (b) a wet or a dry fire main in any other case.
- 6.9 The fire main should be located in the firefighting lobbies of the firefighting shaft and should have an outlet connection and valve at every level other than at fire and rescue access level. However, where firefighting lobbies are not provided in a Purpose Group 1(a) building the fire main should be located in the firefighting stairway.
- 6.10 The design and construction of a fire main should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 9990.

Provisions for vehicle access are given in paragraph 6.19.

### **Venting of heat and smoke from basements**

- 6.11 The build-up of smoke and heat as a result of a fire can seriously inhibit the ability of the Fire and Rescue Service to carry out rescue and firefighting operations in a basement. The problem can be reduced by providing venting facilities to make conditions tenable by providing a route for smoke and heat to escape to the open air from the basement level. These facilities can also be used by the Fire and Rescue Service to let cooler air into the basement.
- 6.12 Venting facilities, connected directly to the external air, should be provided from every basement storey other than –
- (a) a basement in a building of Purpose Group 1(b) or (c);
  - (b) a basement storey which –
    - (i) has a floor area not more than 200 m<sup>2</sup>; or
    - (ii) has a floor not more than 3 m below the lowest adjacent ground level;
  - (c) a basement storey used for car parking and ventilated in accordance with paragraph 4.50; and
  - (d) a basement storey or that part of a basement storey used as a strong room.
- 6.13 Where basements have external doors or windows, the compartments containing the rooms with these doors or windows do not need smoke outlets. It is common for basements to be open to the air on one or more elevations. This may be the result of different ground levels on different sides of the building.

### **Natural venting**

- 6.14 A basement storey may be ventilated by smoke outlets which should –
- (a) be sited at ceiling level within the space they serve;
  - (b) have an aggregate free area of not less than 2.5% of the floor area of the space they serve;

- 
- (c) be distributed as evenly as possible around the perimeter of the building;
  - (d) be located so that they do not adversely affect any escape route from the building; and
  - (e) have a sign stating “smoke outlet from basement” fixed adjacent to each external outlet point.

The smoke outlets from a place of special fire hazard should be separate from the smoke outlets from other areas.

- 6.15 Smoke outlets may discharge by means of windows, stall-board risers or pavement lights which can be opened or knocked out provided such covers are readily accessible to the Fire and Rescue Service.

Shafts enclosing smoke outlets should be of smoke tight non-combustible construction and have the same period of fire resistance as that for elements of structure in the basement storey served.

Shafts from different parts of the same basement storey, or from different basement storeys, should be separated by smoke tight non-combustible fire-resisting construction.

### **Mechanical venting**

- 6.16 A basement may be ventilated by a mechanical air extraction system provided –

- (a) the basement has a sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of ~~BS 5306-2~~ or BS EN 12845; and
- (b) the air extraction system has a capacity of not less than 10 air changes per hour and is capable of operating at a temperature of 300°C for not less than 60 minutes.

The air extraction system should come into operation automatically on the activation of either –

- (i) the sprinkler system; or
- (ii) the fire detection and fire alarm system in the basement where this system complies with BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard.

### **Rolling shutters in compartment walls**

- 6.17 A rolling shutter in a compartment wall should be provided with a suitable operating mechanism so that it can be opened and closed manually by the Fire and Rescue Service.

### **Vehicle access**

- 6.18 For the purposes of this Section vehicle access to the exterior of a building is needed to enable high reach appliances, such as turntable ladders and hydraulic platforms to be used, and to enable pumping appliances to supply water and equipment for firefighting and rescue purposes.

- 
- 6.19 The provisions for vehicle access are related to whether or not the building has a fire main or mains and, where it does not, to the size and height of the building. Where a building –
- (a) does not have a fire main and is a block of flats, access for a pump appliance should be provided to within 45 m (hose route) of ~~each door giving access to~~ **all points within** each individual dwelling;
  - (b) does not have a fire main, is not a block of flats and is less than 2000 m<sup>2</sup> in area and the height to the top storey is less than 11 m, access for a pump appliance should be –
    - (i) provided to within 45 m (hose route) of the building other than for a dwellinghouse where the 45 m should be to ~~a door giving access to the interior~~ **all points within each individual dwelling**;  
or
    - (ii) provided to 15% of the perimeter;
  - (c) does not have a fire main and is other than as described in (a) and (b), access should be provided in accordance with Table 6.2;
  - (d) has dry fire mains, access for a pumping appliance should be provided to within 18 m, and within sight of, each fire main inlet connection point; and
  - (e) has wet fire mains, access for a pumping appliance should be provided to within 18 m, and within sight of the emergency replenishment inlet of the tank serving each fire main.

In every elevation to which fire and rescue access is provided, there should be a door not less than 750 mm wide, giving access to the interior of the building. Where fire mains are provided a door should give access to each fire main.

[Note – the Building Regulations cannot impose requirements for work to be done beyond the boundary of the premises.]

### **Vehicle access routes and vehicular hardstandings areas**

- 6.20 A vehicle access route and vehicular hardstanding area should be designed and constructed to the standards given in Table 6.3 and, in the case of those for high reach appliances, the dimensions shown in Diagram 6.2.

Where the height of the top storey of a building is more than 11 m above the level of the adjoining ground the vehicle access route and the vehicular hardstanding area should be suitable for a high reach appliance. For lower buildings a vehicle access route should be suitable for a pump appliance.

- 6.21 A turning facility should be provided in a dead end vehicle access route which is more than 20 m in length. This should be a hammerhead or turning circle –
- (a) designed on the basis of the dimensions given in Table 6.3; and
  - (b) located so that vehicles do not have to reverse more than 20 m.

Vehicular hardstanding areas should be as level as possible and should not exceed a gradient of 1 in 12.

---

## Evacuation alert systems

- 6.21A In buildings containing flats (purpose group 1(a)) with a storey more than 18 m above ground level, an evacuation alert system (EAS) should be provided in accordance with BS 8629.
- 6.21B The system should enable the fire and rescue service to initiate operation of evacuation alert sounders within each individual dwelling on any single floor, multiple floors and the entire building, according to circumstances.
- 6.21C An evacuation alert system is not, and should not be confused with, a fire alarm system. The EAS should not be integrated with a fire detection and fire alarm system (or any other system), nor should any devices (such as fire detectors), other than evacuation alert devices, be connected to the EAS.

## Wayfinding signage

- 6.21D To assist the fire and rescue service to identify each floor in a building containing flats with a storey more than 11 m above ground level, floor identification signs and flat indicator signs should be provided.
- 6.21E The floor identification signs should meet all of the following—
- the signs should be located on every landing of a protected stairway and every protected corridor/lobby (or open access balcony) into which a firefighting lift opens;
  - the text should be in sans serif typeface with a letter height of at least 50mm. The height of the numeral that designates the floor number should be at least 75mm;
  - the signs should be visible from the top step of a firefighting stair and, where possible, from inside a firefighting lift when the lift car doors open;
  - the signs should be mounted between 1.7m and 2m above floor level and, as far as practicable, all the signs should be mounted at the same height;
  - the text should be on a contrasting background, easily legible and readable in low level lighting conditions or when illuminated with a torch;
  - the wording used on each floor identification sign should take the form Floor X, with X designating the number of the storey, as intended for reference by residents.
- 6.21F The floor number designations should meet all of the following conditions—
- The floor closest to the mean ground level should be designated as either Floor 0 or Ground Floor;
  - Each floor above the ground floor should be numbered sequentially beginning with Floor 1;
  - A lower ground floor should be designated as either Floor -1 or Lower Ground Floor;
  - Each floor below the ground floor should be numbered sequentially beginning with Floor -1 or Basement 1.

- 
- 6.21G All floor identification signs should be supplemented by flat indicator signs, which provide information relating to the flats accessed on each storey. The flat indicator signs should meet all of the following—
- (a) The signs should be sited immediately below the floor identification signs, such that the top edge of the sign is no more than 50mm below the bottom edge of the floor identification sign;
  - (b) The wording should take the form Flats X-Y, with the lowest flat number first;
  - (c) The text should be in sans serif typeface with a letter height of at least half that of the floor indicator sign;
  - (d) The wording should be supplemented by arrows when flats are in more than one direction;
  - (e) The text and arrows should be on a contrasting background, easily legible and readable in low level lighting conditions or when illuminated with a torch.

Note: In the case of multi-storey flats with two or more entrances, the flat number should only be indicated on the normal access storey

## Secure Information Boxes

- 6.21H A secure information box provides a secure facility to store information about a building for use by the fire service during an incident.
- 6.21J Building containing flats (purpose group 1(a)) with a storey more than 11m above ground level should be provided with a secure information box.
- NOTE: Consideration should also be given to other buildings with large, complex or uncommon layouts where the provision of a secure information box may be beneficial.
- 6.21K The box should meet all of the following conditions—
- (a) sized to accommodate all necessary information;
  - (b) easily located and identified by firefighters
  - (c) secured to resist unauthorised access but readily accessible by firefighters; and
  - (d) protected from the weather.
- 6.21L Best practice guidance can be found in Sections 2 to 4 of the *‘Code of Practice for the Provision of Premises Information Boxes in Residential Buildings’ published by the Fire Industry Association (FIA).*”





**Table 6.2 Fire and rescue vehicle access to buildings not fitted with fire mains**

Area of building (m <sup>2</sup> )	Height to top storey <sup>(1)</sup> (m)	Provide vehicle access to	Type of appliance
Up to 2000	Up to 11 Over 11	See paragraph 6.19(b) 15% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup>	Pump High reach
2000-8000	Up to 11 Over 11	15% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup> 50% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup>	Pump High reach
8000-16000	Up to 11 Over 11	50% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup> 50% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup>	Pump High reach
16000-24000	Up to 11 Over 11	75% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup> 75% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup>	Pump High reach
Over 24000	Up to 11 Over 11	100% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup> 100% of perimeter <sup>(2)</sup>	Pump High reach

Notes:

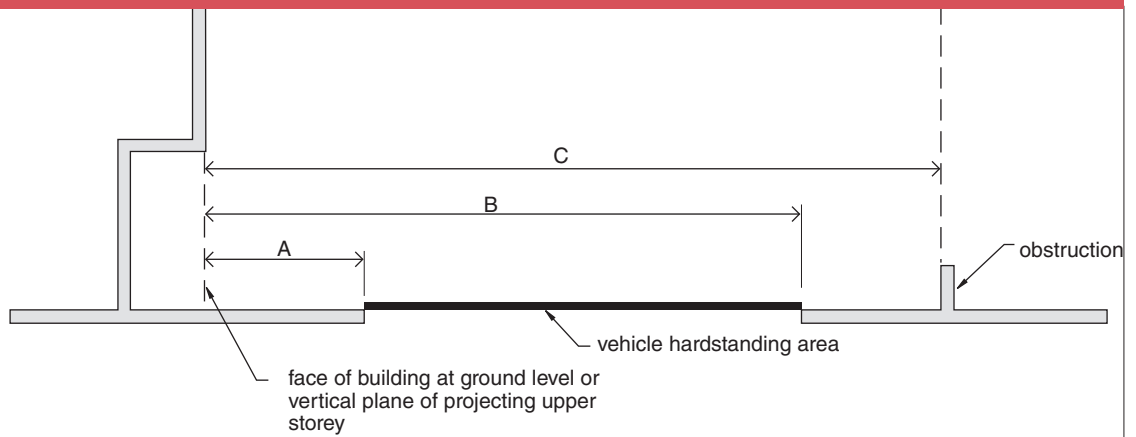
(1) For Purpose Group 7(a) buildings the height should be measured to the mean roof level.

(2) The perimeter is the aggregate plan perimeter found by vertical projection onto a horizontal ground plane excluding walls separating buildings.

**Table 6.3 Fire and rescue vehicle access routes**

Appliance type	Minimum width of road between kerbs (m)	Minimum width of gateways (m)	Minimum turning circle between kerbs (m)	Minimum turning circle between walls (m)	Minimum clearance height (m)	Minimum carrying capacity (tonnes)
Pump	3.7	3.1	16.8	19.2	3.7	12.5
High reach	3.7	3.1	26.0	29.0	4.0	17.0

**Diagram 6.2 Relationship between a building and a vehicle access route or a vehicular hardstanding area for a high reach appliance**



**Dimensions**

- A maximum distance\* to near edge of vehicle hardstanding area
- B minimum distance to farthest edge of vehicle hardstanding area
- C minimum width of unobstructed space

**Type of appliance**

	Hydraulic platform (m)	Turntable ladder (m)
A	2.0	4.9
B	7.5	10.0
C	9.7	10.0

**Note:**

\* The hardstanding may extend closer to the building but any such extension should not be considered as a vehicle hardstanding area.

### Introduction

- 7.1 Regulation 37A requires that when a building in scope is erected or created as a result of a relevant change of use, the person carrying out the work must provide sufficient fire safety information for persons to operate and maintain the building in reasonable safety. This information should be given at the completion of the work or when the building is first occupied (whichever is earlier).
- 7.2 For existing buildings which are relevant premises or buildings containing one or more flats with a storey more than 11m above ground level, subject to alteration and/or extension work, the information required should only relate to the work involved where it has an impact on the fire safety strategy of the building.
- 7.3 This Section is only intended as a guide as to the kind of information that should be provided. For clarity the guidance is given in terms of essential information and additional information for complex buildings, however the level of detail required will vary and should be considered on a case-by-case basis.

### Essential information

- 7.4 For most buildings, basic information on the location of fire protection measures may be sufficient. An as-built plan of the building should be provided showing –
- a) escape routes – this should include exit capacity (i.e. the maximum allowable number of people for each storey and for the building);
  - b) location of fire-separating elements (including cavity barriers in walk-in spaces);
  - c) fire doorsets, fire doorsets fitted with a self-closing device and other doors equipped with relevant hardware;
  - d) locations of fire and/or smoke detector heads, alarm call-points, detection/alarm control boxes, alarm sounders, fire safety signage, emergency lighting, fire extinguishers, dry or wet fire mains and other firefighting equipment and hydrants outside the building;
  - e) any sprinkler system(s) provided (whether as a compensatory feature or otherwise), including isolating valves and control equipment;
  - f) any smoke control system(s) or ventilation system with a smoke control function, including mode of operation and control systems; and
  - g) any high risk areas (e.g. heating machinery).
- 7.5 Details should be provided of all of the following –
- a) specifications of any fire safety equipment provided, including routine maintenance schedules;
  - b) any assumptions regarding the management of the building in the design of the fire safety arrangements; and

- 
- c) any provision enabling the evacuation of disabled people, which can be used when designing suitable personal emergency evacuation plans.

### **Additional information for complex buildings**

7.6 For more complex buildings, a detailed record should be provided of both of the following –

- a) the fire safety strategy; and
- b) procedures for operating and maintaining any fire protection measures. This should include an outline cause and effect matrix/strategy for the building.

Further guidance is available in clause 9 and Annex H of BS 9999.

7.7 The records should include details of all of the following –

- a) the fire safety strategy, including all assumptions in the design of the fire safety systems (such as fire load). Any risk assessments or risk analysis;
- b) all assumptions in the design of the fire safety arrangements for the management of the building;
- c) all of the following -
  - i. escape routes (including occupant load and capacity of escape routes);
  - ii. any provision to enable the evacuation of disabled people;
  - iii. escape strategy (e.g. simultaneous or phased) and
  - iv. muster points
- d) all passive fire safety measures, including all of the following -
  - i. compartmentation (i.e. location of fire-separating elements);
  - ii. cavity barriers
  - iii. fire doorsets, including fire doorsets fitted with a self-closing device and other doors equipped with relevant hardware (e.g. electronic security locks)
  - iv. duct dampers; and
  - v. fire shutters;
- e) all of the following -
  - i. fire detector heads;
  - ii. smoke detector heads;
  - iii. alarm call points;
  - iv. detection/alarm control boxes;
  - v. alarm sounders;
  - vi. emergency communications systems;
  - vii. cctv;
  - viii. fire safety signage;
  - ix. emergency lighting;
  - x. fire extinguishers;

- 
- xi. dry or wet fire mains and other firefighting equipment;
  - xii. other interior facilities for the fire and rescue service;
  - xiii. emergency control rooms;
  - xiv. location of hydrants outside the building;
  - xv. other exterior facilities for the fire and rescue service; and
  - xvi. any evacuation alert sounder system.
- f) All active fire safety measures, including both of the following
- i. Sprinkler system(s) design (whether as a compensatory feature or otherwise), including isolating valves and control equipment; and
  - ii. Smoke control system(s) (or heating, ventilation and air conditioning system with a smoke control function) design, including mode of operation and control systems.
- g) Any high risk areas (e.g. heating machinery) and particular hazards;
- h) Plans of the building as built, showing the locations of the above;
- i) Both of the following -
- i. Specifications of any fire safety equipment provided, including all of the following -
    - Operational details
    - Operators manual
    - Software
    - System zoning
    - Routine inspection, testing and maintenance schedules
  - ii. Records of any acceptance or commissioning tests
- j) Any other details appropriate for the specific building.

- 8.1 Sprinkler systems installed in buildings can reduce the risk to life and significantly reduce the degree of damage caused by fire. Sprinkler protection can also sometimes be used as a compensatory feature where the provisions of this Technical booklet are varied in some way.
- 8.2 Where sprinklers are provided it is normal practice to provide sprinkler protection throughout the building. Sprinklers in flats should be provided within the individual flats, they may also need to be provided in the common areas such as stairs, corridors or landings when these areas are not fire sterile.
- 8.3 Where sprinklers are being installed as a compensatory feature to address a specific risk or hazard, it may be acceptable to protect only part of a building. Further guidance can also be found in *Sprinklers for safety: Use and Benefits of Incorporating Sprinkler in Buildings and Structures*.
- 8.4 There are many alternative or innovative fire suppression systems available. Where these are used, it is necessary to ensure that such systems have been designed and tested for use in buildings and are fit for their intended purpose.

### Design of sprinkler systems

- 8.5 Where required, sprinkler systems should be provided throughout the building or separated part, unless acting as a compensatory feature to address a specific risk. They should be designed and installed in accordance with the following—
- (a) For residential buildings, the requirements of BS 9251,
  - (b) For non-residential buildings, the requirements of BS EN 12845, including the relevant hazard classification together with additional measures to improve system reliability and availability as described in Annex F of the standard.

NOTE: Any sprinkler system installed to satisfy the requirements of Part E of the Building Regulations should be provided with additional measures to improve system reliability and availability and is therefore to be regarded as a life safety system. However, there may be some circumstances in which additional measures to improve system reliability and availability specified in Annex F of BS EN 12845 are inappropriate or unnecessary.

- 8.6 If the provisions in a building vary from those in this document, sprinkler protection can also sometimes be used as a compensatory feature. BS 9251 makes additional recommendations when sprinklers are proposed as compensatory features.

---

## Water supplies and pumps

- 8.7 For non-residential sprinkler systems designed and installed to BS EN 12845, water supplies should consist of either of the following —
- (a) Two single water supplies complying with clause 9.6.1, independent of each other.
  - (b) Two stored water supplies meeting all of the following conditions.
    - i. Gravity or suction tanks should satisfy all the requirements of clause 9.6.2(b), other than capacity.
    - ii. Any pump arrangements should comply with clause 10.2.
    - iii. In addition to meeting the requirements for inflow, either of the following should apply.
      - The capacity of each tank should be at least half the specified minimum water volume of a single full capacity tank, appropriate to the hazard.
      - One tank should be at least equivalent to half the specified water volume of a single full capacity tank, and the other shall not be less than the minimum volume of a reduced capacity tank (see clause 9.3.4) appropriate to the hazard.

The total capacity of the water supply in (iii), including any inflow for a reduced capacity tank, should be at least that of a single full holding capacity tank that complies with Table 9, Table 10 or clause 9.3.2.3, as appropriate to the hazard and pipework design.

- 8.8 For the systems described in paragraph 8.7, both of the following apply if pumps are used to draw water from two tanks.
- (a) Each pump should be able to draw water from either tank.
  - (b) Any one pump, or either tank, should be able to be isolated.

The sprinkler water supplies should not be used as connections for other services or other fixed firefighting systems.

- 8.9 For a sprinkler system to be effective it is essential that there is an appropriate water supply. It is strongly recommended that developers and designers discuss project specific details with Northern Ireland Water to determine what supply is likely to be available and what pressure can be expected.



## Appendix A Purpose Groups

- A.1 The provisions of this Section should apply when using Sections 2 to 6 of this Technical Booklet.

### Purpose groups

- A.2 As many of the provisions in this Technical Booklet are related to the use of a building or compartment it is necessary to classify each building and compartment, according to its use, into a purpose group.

A building may have a single use or it may have many uses. Sub-paragraphs (b) and (c) describe the circumstances where it is appropriate to treat a different use as a purpose group in its own right. (Note that the provisions of paragraph 4.17 require compartmentation between different purpose groups.)

Every building and compartment should be classified according to its use, or intended use, into the most appropriate of those purpose groups given in Table A.1 and –

- (a) where the use of a building or compartment will vary from time to time, it should be classified as the purpose group to which the more or most onerous provisions in Section 4 apply;
- (b) where a building or compartment has one or more uses which are not ancillary to the main use of that building or compartment, each portion given over to a separate use should be classified separately; and
- (c) where the building or compartment has one or more uses which are ancillary to the main use of that building or compartment, each portion given over to an ancillary use should be classified separately when –
  - (i) it is a flat;
  - (ii) in a Purpose Group 4 building or compartment more than 280 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area – it is storage occupying more than one third of the total floor area of the building or compartment; or
  - (iii) in a building or compartment of any purpose group more than 280 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area – it is a use [other than in (i) and (ii)] occupying more than one fifth of the total floor area of the building or compartment.

**Table A.1 Classification of purpose groups**

Title	Group	Purpose for which the building or compartment of a building is intended to be used
Residential** (Dwellings)	<b>1(a)</b>	Flat
	<b>1(b)</b>	Dwellinghouse which contains a habitable storey with a floor level which is more than 4.5 m above ground level
	<b>1(c)</b>	Dwellinghouse which does not contain a habitable storey with a floor level which is more than 4.5 m above ground level
Residential (Institutional)  (Other)	<b>2(a)</b>	Hospital, nursing home, home for old people or for children, school or other similar establishment used as living accommodation or for the treatment, care or maintenance of people suffering from illness or mental or physical disability, place of detention, where such people sleep on the premises
	<b>2(b)</b>	Hotel, boarding house, residential college, hall of residence, hostel, house in multiple occupation, and any other residential purpose not described above
Office	<b>3</b>	Offices or premises used for the purpose of administration, clerical work (including writing, book keeping, sorting papers, filing, typing, duplicating, machine calculating, drawing and the editorial preparation of matter for publication, police and fire service work), handling money (including banking and building society work), and communications (including postal, telegraph and radio communications) or radio, television, film, audio or video recording, or performance (not open to the public) and their control
Shop and Commercial	<b>4</b>	Shops or premises used for a retail trade or business (including the sale to members of the public of food or drink for immediate consumption and retail by auction, self-selection and over-the-counter wholesale trading, the business of lending books or periodicals for gain and the business of a barber or hairdresser) and premises to which the public is invited to deliver or to collect goods in connection with their hire, repair or other treatment, or (except in the case of repair of motor vehicles) where they themselves may carry out such repairs or other treatments
Assembly and Recreation	<b>5</b>	Place of assembly, entertainment or recreation, including bingo halls, broadcasting, recording and film studios open to the public, casinos, dance halls, entertainment, conference, exhibition and leisure centres, funfairs and amusement arcades, museums and art galleries, non-residential clubs, theatres, cinemas and concert halls, educational establishments, dancing schools, gymnasia, swimming pool buildings, riding schools, skating rinks, sports pavilions, sports stadia, law courts, churches and other buildings for worship, crematoria, libraries open to the public, non-residential day centres, clinics, health centres and surgeries, passenger stations and termini for air, rail, road or sea travel, public toilets, zoos and menageries
Industrial	<b>6</b>	Factories and other premises used for manufacturing, altering, repairing, cleaning, washing, breaking-up, adapting or processing any article, generating power, or slaughtering livestock
Storage and other non-residential <sup>+</sup>	<b>7(a)</b>	Place for the storage or deposit of goods or materials [other than described under <b>7(b)</b> ] and any building not within any of the Purpose Groups <b>1</b> to <b>6</b>
	<b>7(b)</b>	Car parks designed to admit and accommodate only cars, motorcycles and passenger or light goods vehicles weighing no more than 2500 kg gross

Notes:

\* Purpose Group **1** includes –

- (a) any surgeries, consulting rooms, offices or similar accommodation not more than 50 m<sup>2</sup> in total floor area, forming part of a dwelling and used by an occupant of the dwelling in a professional or business capacity; and
- (b) an attached garage not more than 40 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area.

+ A detached garage or open carport not more than 40 m<sup>2</sup> in floor area is included in Purpose Group **1(c)**; as is a detached building which consists of a garage and open carport where neither the garage nor open carport exceeds 40 m<sup>2</sup> in area.

### Rules for measurement

- B.1 In this Technical Booklet the following rules for measurement apply –
- (a) The area of a roof, rooflight or floor should be measured as shown in Diagram B.1.
  - (b) The cubic capacity of a building, separated part or compartment should be measured (as shown in Diagram B.2) from –
    - (i) the upper surface of the lowest floor;
    - (ii) the under surface of roof or ceiling surface as appropriate; and
    - (iii) the inner surfaces of the enclosing walls or, where there is no enclosing wall, the outermost edge of the floor.

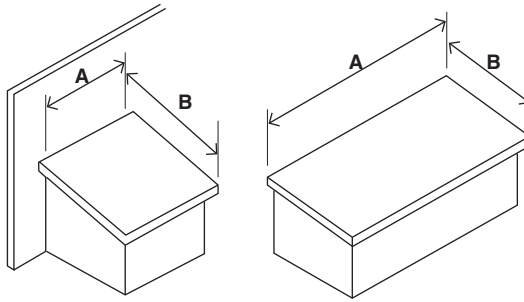
The volume of internal floors, walls and partitions should be included for calculation purposes.

- (c) The number of storeys in a building or a separated part of a building should be counted as shown in Diagram B.3, and should exclude basement storeys.

In a building of Purpose Group 5 a gallery (other than a loading gallery, fly gallery, stage grid, lighting bridge, or any gallery used for similar purposes, or provided for the purposes of maintenance or repair) should be counted as a storey. In a building of any other purpose group a gallery should not be counted as a storey.
- (d) The height of a building should be measured as shown in Diagram B.4.
- (e) The height to a storey (other than when measuring for firefighting shaft purposes) should be measured from the lowest ground level adjacent to the building to the upper surface of the floor in that storey, as shown in Diagram B.5.
- (f) The depth of a basement (other than when measuring for firefighting shaft purposes) should be measured from the highest ground level adjacent to the building to the upper surface of the floor of the lowest basement storey as shown in Diagram B.5.
- (g) The width of a doorway should be measured as the clear width when the door is open as shown in Diagram B.6.
- (h) The width of an escape route should be measured at 1.5 m above floor level or pitch line. The projection of handrails, if less than 100 mm, and stringers, skirtings and architraves if less than 30 mm, on either or both sides should be ignored.

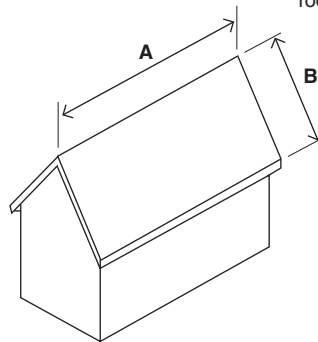
## Diagram B.1 Areas

see para B.1(a)

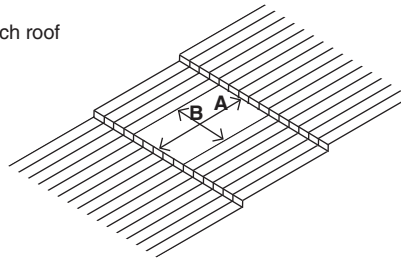


(i) Lean-to roof

(ii) Flat or monopitch roof

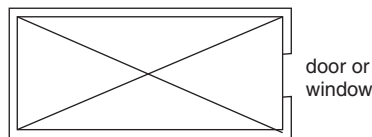


(iii) Double pitch roof



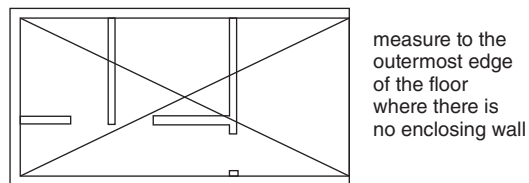
(iv) Rooflight

**(a) Surface area – roofs and rooflights – in each case measure the visible area**



door or window

(i) Building or room



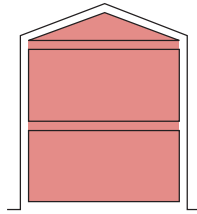
measure to the outermost edge of the floor where there is no enclosing wall

(ii) Storey, separated part or compartment

**(b) Floor area – in each case measure to the internal surface of enclosing walls and include internal walls and partitions**

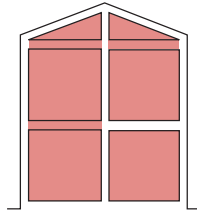
## Diagram B.2 Cubic capacity

see para B.1(b)



section

(a) Building

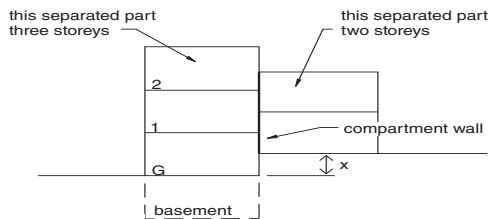
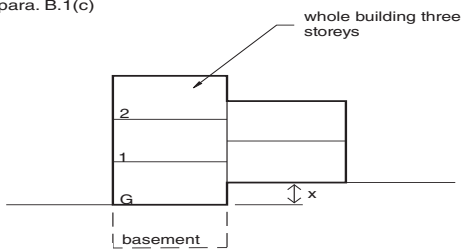


section

(b) Separated part or compartment of a building

## Diagram B.3 Number of storeys

see para. B.1(c)

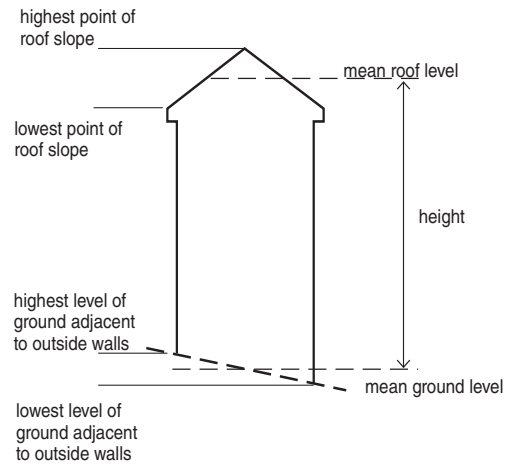


**Notes:**

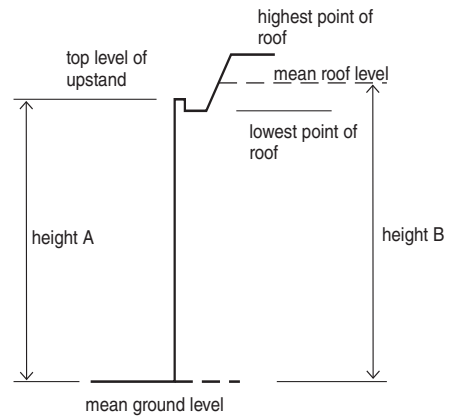
- 1 Count at the position which gives the greatest number of storeys.
- 2 Where X exceeds 1.2 m the building or separated part is considered to have two basement storeys and therefore be a two storey building.

## Diagram B.4 Height of a building

see para B.1(d)

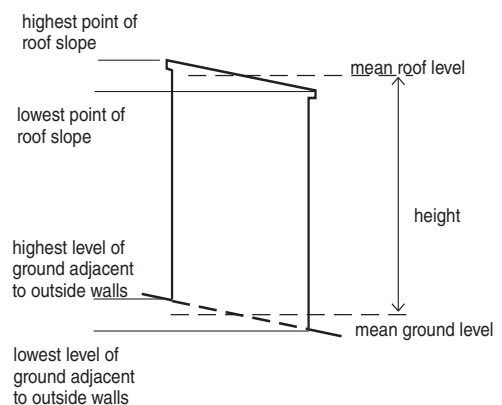


(a) Double pitch roof



use height A or B whichever is greater

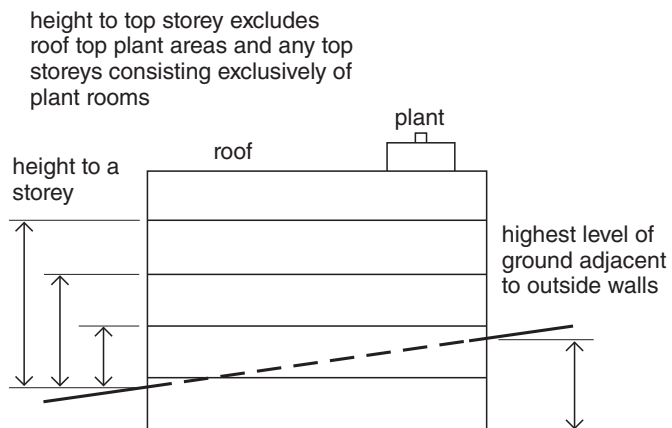
(b) Mansard type roof



(c) Flat or monopitch roof

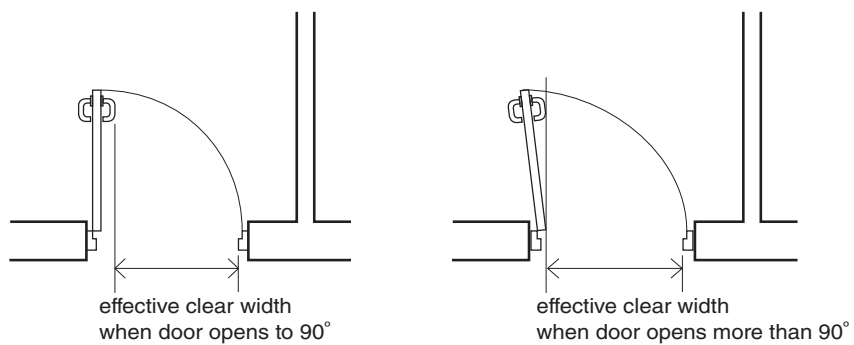
## Diagram B.5 Height to a storey and depth of a basement

(e) and B.1(f)



## Diagram B.6 Width of a doorway

see paras 2.92 and B.1(g)



## Appendix C Publications referred to

**BS EN ISO 306: 2004 Plastics. Thermoplastic materials. Determination of Vicat softening temperature (VST).**

**BS EN ISO 1182: 2002 2020 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Non-combustibility test.**

**BS EN ISO 1716: 2002 2018 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Determination of the heat of combustion.**

**BS EN ISO 11925 Reaction to fire tests. Ignitability of building products subjected to direct impingement of flame**

Part 2: 2002 2020 Single-flame source test.

**BS EN 54-11: 2001 Fire detection and fire alarm systems**

Part 11: 2001 Manual call points

AMD 16126 June 2006

AMD 16487 June 2006.

**BS EN 81-1: 1998 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts**

Part 1: Electric lifts.

**BS EN 81-2: 1998 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts**

Part 2: Hydraulic lifts.

**BS EN 81-58: 2003 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts. Examination and tests.**

Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test.

**BS EN 81-72: 2003 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts. Particular applications for passenger and goods passenger lifts**

Part 72: Firefighters lifts.

**BS EN 771-3: 2003 Specification for masonry units**

Part 3: 2003 Aggregate concrete masonry units (dense and lightweight aggregates)

AMD 16001 February 2006.

**BS EN 1125: 2008 Building hardware. Panic exit devices operated by a horizontal bar, for use on escape routes. Requirements and test methods.**

**BS EN 1363 Fire resistance tests**

Part 1: 1999 General requirements

Part 2: 1999 Alternative and additional procedures.

---

**BS EN 1364 Fire resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements**

Part 1: 1999 Walls

Part 2: 1999 Ceilings.

**BS EN 1365 Fire resistance tests for loadbearing elements**

Part 1: 1999 Walls

Part 2: 2000 Floors and roofs

Part 3: 2000 Beams

Part 4: 1999 Columns.

**BS EN 1366 Fire resistance tests for service installations**

Part 1: 1999 Ducts

Part 2: 1999 Fire dampers.

**BS EN 1634: 2004 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door and shutter assemblies, openable windows and elements of building hardware**

Part 3: Smoke control test for door and shutter assemblies.

**BS EN 1634: 2008 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware**

Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows.

Part 2: Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware.

**BS EN 12101-6: 2005 **2022** Smoke and heat control systems**

Part 6: Specification for pressure differential systems. Kits.

**BS EN 12845: 2004 **2015** Fixed firefighting systems. Automatic sprinkler systems. Design, installation and maintenance.**

**A1:2019**

**BS EN 13238: 2001 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Conditioning procedures and general rules for selection of substrates.**

**BS EN 13501 Fire classification of construction products and building elements**

Part 1: 2007-2018 Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests

Part 2: 2007 Classification using data from fire resistance tests, excluding ventilation services

Part 3: 2005 Classification using data from fire resistance tests on products and elements used in building service installations: fire resisting ducts and fire dampers

Part 5: 2005 Classification using data from external fire exposure to roofs tests.



---

**BS EN 13823: 2002 2020** Reaction to fire tests for building products. Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item.

**BS EN 14604: 2005** Smoke alarm devices.

**BS EN 15725:2010** Extended application reports on fire performance of construction products and building elements

**BS EN 50200: 2006** Method of test for resistance to fire of unprotected small cables for use in emergency circuits.

**DD ENV 1187: 2002, test 4** Test methods for external fire exposure to roofs

AMD 16344 May 2006.

**BS 476: Fire tests on building materials and structures**

Part 3: 1958 External fire exposure roof test

Part 3: 2004 Classification and method of test for external fire exposure to roofs

Part 4: 1970 (1984) Non-combustibility test for materials

AMD 2483 March 1978

AMD 4390 September 1983

Part 6: 1981 Method of test for fire propagation for products

AMD 4329

Part 6: 1989 Method of test for fire propagation for products

Part 7: 1971 Surface spread of flame tests for materials

Part 7: 1987 (1993) Method for classification of the surface spread of flame of products

AMD 6249 January 1990

AMD 7030 January 1992

AMD 7612 April 1993

Part 7: 1997 Method of test to determine the classification of the surface spread of flame of products

Part 8: 1972 Test methods and criteria for the fire resistance of elements of building construction

AMD 1873 January 1976

AMD 3816 November 1981

AMD 4822 May 1985

Part 11: 1982 (1988) Method for assessing the heat emission from building materials

Part 20: 1987 Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles)

AMD 6487 April 1990

Part 21: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction

---

Part 22: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

Part 23: 1987 Methods for determination of the contribution of components to the fire resistance of a structure

Part 24: 1987 Method for determination of the fire resistance of ventilation ducts

Section 31.1: 1983 Methods for measuring smoke penetration through doorsets and shutter assemblies.

AMD 8366

**BS 747: 1977 (1986) Specification for roofing felts**

AMD 3775 November 1981

AMD 4609 February 1985

AMD 5101 February 1986.

**BS 2782: Method of testing plastic**

Part 0: 2004 Introduction.

**BS 4514: 1983 Specification for unplasticized PVC soil and ventilating pipes, fittings and accessories**

AMD 4517 June 1984

AMD 5584 November 1987.

**BS 5255: 1989 Specification for thermoplastics waste pipe and fittings.**

**BS 5266: Emergency lighting**

Part 1: 2005 Code of practice for the emergency lighting of premises.

**BS 5306: Fire extinguishing installations and equipment on premises**

Part 1: 1976 (1988) Hydrant systems, hose reels and foam inlets

AMD 4649 August 1984

AMD 5756 February 1988

Part 2: 1990 Specification for sprinkler systems

AMD 9809 January 1998

AMD 9985 April 1998.

**BS 5395: Stairs, ladders and walkways**

Part 2: 1984 Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs

AMD 6076 July 1989.

**BS 5438: 1989 Methods of test for flammability of textile fabrics when subjected to a small igniting flame applied to the face or bottom edge of vertically oriented specimens**

AMD 6509 June 1990

AMD 8308 December 1994.

**BS 5446: Fire detection and fire alarm devices for dwellings**

Part 1: 2000 Specifications for smoke alarms

Part 2: 2003 Specification for heat alarms.

---

**BS 5499: Graphical symbols and signs – Safety signs, including fire safety signs**

Part 1: 2002 Specification for geometric shapes, colours and layout

Part 4: 2000 Code of practice for escape route signing

AMD 12082 November 2000.

**BS 5588: Fire precautions in the design, construction and use of buildings**

Part 1: 1990 Code of practice for residential buildings

AMD 7840 September 1993

AMD 14988 December 2004

Part 4: 1998 Code of practice for smoke control using pressure differentials

AMD 10019 April 1998

AMD 13868 December 2002

AMD 14989 December 2004

~~Part 5: 2004 Access and facilities for fire-fighting~~

Part 6: 1991 Code of practice for places of assembly

AMD 10212 December 1998

AMD 10443 August 1999

AMD 14990 December 2004

Part 7: 1997 Code of practice for the incorporation of atria in buildings

AMD 10546 August 1999

AMD 14991 December 2004

Part 8: 1999 Code of practice for means of escape for disabled people

AMD 14992 December 2004

Part 9: 1999 Code of practice for ventilation and air conditioning ductwork

AMD 14993 December 2004

Part 10: 1991 Code of practice for shopping complexes

AMD 14994 December 2004.

**BS 5839: Fire detection and fire alarm systems for buildings**

Part 1: 2002 + A2: 2008 Code of practice for system design, installation, commissioning and maintenance

AMD 15447 December 2004

A2 March 2008

Part 3: 1988 Specification for automatic release mechanisms for certain fire protection equipment

AMD 10207 November 1998

AMD 17256 July 2007

Part 6: ~~2004~~ 2019 Code of practice for the design, installation and maintenance of fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellings

A1 October 2020

---

Part 8: 1998 Code of practice for the design, installation, commissioning and maintenance of voice alarm systems

Part 9: 2003 Code of practice for the design, installation, commissioning and maintenance of emergency voice communication systems.

**BS 5867: Specification for fabrics for curtains and drapes**

Part 2: 1980 (1993) Flammability requirements

AMD 4319 July 1983.

**BS 5950: Structural use of steelwork in building**

Part 8: 2003 Code of practice for fire resistant design.

**BS 6387: 1994 Specification for performance requirements for cables required to maintain circuit integrity under fire conditions.**

**BS 7346: Components for smoke and heat control systems**

Part 6: 2005 Specification for cable systems.

**BS 7974: 2001 Application of fire safety engineering principles to the design of buildings – Code of practice.**

**BS 8629: 2019 Code of practice for the design, installation, commissioning and maintenance of evacuation alert systems for use by fire and rescue services in buildings containing flats**

**BS 9251: 2021 Code of practice fire sprinkler systems for domestic and residential occupancies.**

**BS 9990: 2006 Code of practice for non-automatic fire-fighting systems in buildings.**

**BS 9999: 2008 2017 Code of practice for fire safety in the design, management and use of buildings.**

**BR 128: 1988 Guidelines for the construction of fire-resisting structural elements.**

**BR 135: 1988 2013 Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multi-storey buildings.**

**BR 187: 1991 External fire spread: building separation and boundary distances.**

**BR 368: 1999 Design methodologies for smoke and heat exhaust ventilation.**

**Building Bulletin 100: Design for fire safety in schools: published by the Department for Children, schools and families.**

**Code of Practice for the Provision of Premises Information Boxes in Residential Buildings' published by the Fire Industry Association (FIA).**

**DOE Circular 12/92 Houses in multiple occupation.**

**Fire performance of Green roofs and walls 2013 published by MHCLG.**

**The Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006.**

---

**The Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010.**

**Guide to fire precautions in premises used as hotels and boarding houses which require a fire certificate: published by the Home Office.**

**Guide to undertaking technical assessments of fire performance of construction products based on fire test evidence: published by Passive Fire Protection Forum 2021.**

**Sprinklers for safety: Use and Benefits of Incorporating Sprinkler in Buildings and Structures.**

**The International Association of Cold Storage Contractors (European Division): Design, construction, specification and fire management of insulated envelopes for temperature controlled environments: Second Edition 2008.**

**The Northern Ireland Guide to safety at sports grounds: 2007 published by the Department of Culture, Arts and Leisure.**

**Northern Ireland Firecode: November 2010.**

**Safety signs and signals: guidance on regulations: Second edition 2009: published by Health and Safety Executive.**

**The Steel Construction Institute 2002: Fire and steel construction: Single Storey Steel Framed Buildings in Fire Boundary Conditions.**

**DFP Technical Booklet B: 2012 Materials and workmanship**

---

## Technical Booklets

The following list comprises the series of Technical Booklets prepared by the Department for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012.

Technical Booklet B	Materials and workmanship
Technical Booklet C	Preparation of site and resistance to contaminants and moisture
Technical Booklet D	Structure
Technical Booklet E	Fire safety
Technical Booklet F1	Conservation of fuel and power in dwellings
Technical Booklet F2	Conservation of fuel and power in buildings other than dwellings
Technical Booklet G	Resistance to the passage of sound
Technical Booklet H	Stairs, ramps, guarding and protection from impact
Technical Booklet J	Solid waste in buildings
Technical Booklet K	Ventilation
Technical Booklet L	Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems
Technical Booklet M	<a href="#">Physical infrastructure for high-speed electronic communications network</a>
Technical Booklet N	Drainage
Technical Booklet P	Sanitary appliances, unvented hot water storage systems and reducing the risk of scalding
Technical Booklet R	Access to and use of buildings
Technical Booklet V	Glazing

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in a Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the guidance is current on the date when plans are deposited or notice given to the district council.